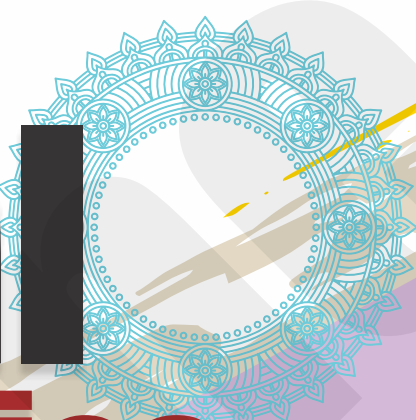




TIME TALES

Social Studies

(A Textbook of Social Studies)





TIME TALES

Social Studies

(A Textbook of Social Studies)

प्रकाशक की पूर्व लिखित अनुमति के बिना इस प्रकाशन के किसी भी भाग को छापना तथा इलेक्ट्रॉनिकी- मशीनी फोटो प्रतिलिपि, रिकार्डिंग अथवा किसी अन्य विधि से पुनः प्रयोग द्वारा इसका संग्रहण अथवा प्रसारण वर्जित है।

यद्यपि इस पुस्तक को यथासंभव शुद्ध एवं त्रुटिरहित प्रस्तुत करने का भरसक प्रयास किया गया है, तथापि इसमें कोई भी कमी अथवा त्रुटि अनाच्छिन्नकृत ढंग से रह गई हो तो उससे कारित क्षति अथवा संताप के लिए लेखक, प्रकाशक एवं मुद्रक का कोई दायित्व नहीं होगा।

इस पुस्तक में रह गई तथ्यात्मक त्रुटियाँ तथा अन्य किसी भी कमी के लिए विद्वत पाठकगण से भूल - सुधार व सुझाव आमंत्रित हैं। प्राप्त सुझावों, शंकाओं अथवा त्रुटियों का समाधान आगामी संस्करण में कर दिया जाएगा।

Preface

The topic of our society has many different facets. Our social existence starts in the family and eventually encompasses the entire planet. The "**Social Studies**" series has been carefully created for grades 6 to 8 to foster topic understanding and improve goal-oriented abilities.

While framing this series, we had in mind not only the requirements of the syllabus but also the problems faced by the students and the teachers. Keeping this in mind, we have incorporated the key features of this series:

Sincere efforts have been made through pictures, diagrams, and maps.

- ✿ **Key Highlights** talk about the core of the chapter.
- ✿ **Let's Start** with gives a kick start start to the chapters.
- ✿ **Fact File** teaches a unique fact related to the chapter which develops curiosity among the learners.
- ✿ **Let's Think** is a section which develops the learners' socio-emotional intelligence, enhancing conceptual, and creative thinking.
- ✿ **Word Treasure** contains the meaning of the difficult words.
- ✿ Well developed exercises ensures that the learners can understand the concept of the chapter.
- ✿ **HOTS Questions** arouse a child's curiosity taking it to High Order Thinking Skills.
- ✿ **Value Based** Questions are very unique as the learners learn politeness, gratitude, care and love, sympathy, generosity, kindness, friendship, devotion, honesty, patriotism, unity, teamwork, equality, courage, determination, perseverance, harmony, love for all creatures, and self-reliance are just a few of these values that have been selected for amplification.
- ✿ **Activity Zone** hones the co-scholastic skills of the learners.
- ✿ **'Let's Summarise'** helps the learners to revise the chapter in one shot.

We have tried to present the series in a creative way and our aim is served when it meets the requirements of our students and teachers. Further suggestions for the improvement of the book are warmly welcomed.

– Publishers

CONTENTS



UNIT-I : HISTORY

Chapter-1	Where, when and How?	5
Chapter-2	Establishment and Expansion of British Rule in India	12
Chapter-3	Rural Life and Society	27
Chapter-4	Colonialism and Tribal Societies	34
Chapter-5	Indian Crafts and Industries In the 19th Century	43
Chapter-6	The Revolt of 1857	53
Chapter-7	Women and Reform	64
Chapter-8	Challenging the Caste System	75
Chapter-9	Colonialism and Urban Change	83
Chapter-10	Changes in the Arts : Painting, Literature and Architecture	90
Chapter-11	The Nationalist Movement (1885-1918)	98
Chapter-12	Indian National Movement (1919-1947)	109

UNIT-II : GEOGRAPHY

Chapter-13	Resources	126
Chapter-14	Land and Soil Resources	132
Chapter-15	Water Resources	141
Chapter-16	Natural Vegetation and Wildlife	149
Chapter-17	Agriculture Typology	158
Chapter-18	Important Crops	165
Chapter-19	Natural Disasters: Earthquake, Cyclones, Floods	174

UNIT-III : CIVICS

Chapter-20	Constitution : Its Role	181
Chapter-21	Goals Our Constitution	194
Chapter-22	The Judiciary	203
Chapter-23	Police and Human Rights	210



Where, When and How?

Key Highlights

- ❖ Time span : A synopsis
- ❖ Modern Period in India
- ❖ An overview of Modern Period
- ❖ Sources to study the Modern Period

Let's Start With



Modern history is the global historiographical approach to the timeframe after the post-classical history. We cannot study the modern history of India in radical separation from the history of the world. Various developments and changes happening in that period around the world need to be taken into account. One of the most pivotal sources to study the modern period are the official records of the British administration which acquaintances about the policies adopted by the British in India.

TIME SPAN : A SYNOPSIS

We have already learnt history is divided into three periods—ancient, medieval and modern. The time span of this division is, however, not uniform for the entire world. In Europe, for instance, the modern period began around the 16th century, which was very much a part of medieval history in India. In India the death of Aurangzeb (1707) is considered to be the beginning of the modern period.



Fact File

In 1817, James Mill in his book 'A History of British India' divided Indian History into three periods — Hindu, Muslim and British.



AN OVERVIEW

The medieval Europe witnessed a series of socio-political transformations. Change was in the air : in arts, literature, science or politics. Special stress was laid on the spirit of enquiry by the European Renaissance. (Revival of interest in the life of human beings led to **litimanisiii** which found expression in music, painting, sculpture, theatre and literature.)

- In AD 1453, the Turks took control of the overland trade routes connecting Europe to the East. This forced the Europeans to look for alternative sea routes.
- Spanish and Portuguese explorers such as Magellan, Christopher Columbus and Vasco da Gama made their mark in finding new sea routes across the globe.
- The renaissance period witnessed the great voyages of discovery and exploration. Columbus discovered America in 1492, while a portuguese sailor named Vasco-da Gama discovered a new sea route to India in 1498.

THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

In the second half of the 18th century, the labour-based economy of England switched over to machines and industrial progress. It began with the mechanisation of the textile industry. Before this switch over the goods were all handmade. The merchants supplied the peasant families with raw material and collected the finished products from them. But the system lacked to satisfy the growing demand for goods.

Thus, by the end of the 18th century, the rich merchants set up factories, installed machines and started making machine made goods. This shift from the manual system to the machine system is known as the **Industrial Revolution**. Further inventions, such as railways telegraph, electricity, etc. magnified both its impact and its ability to influence the future course of world history.

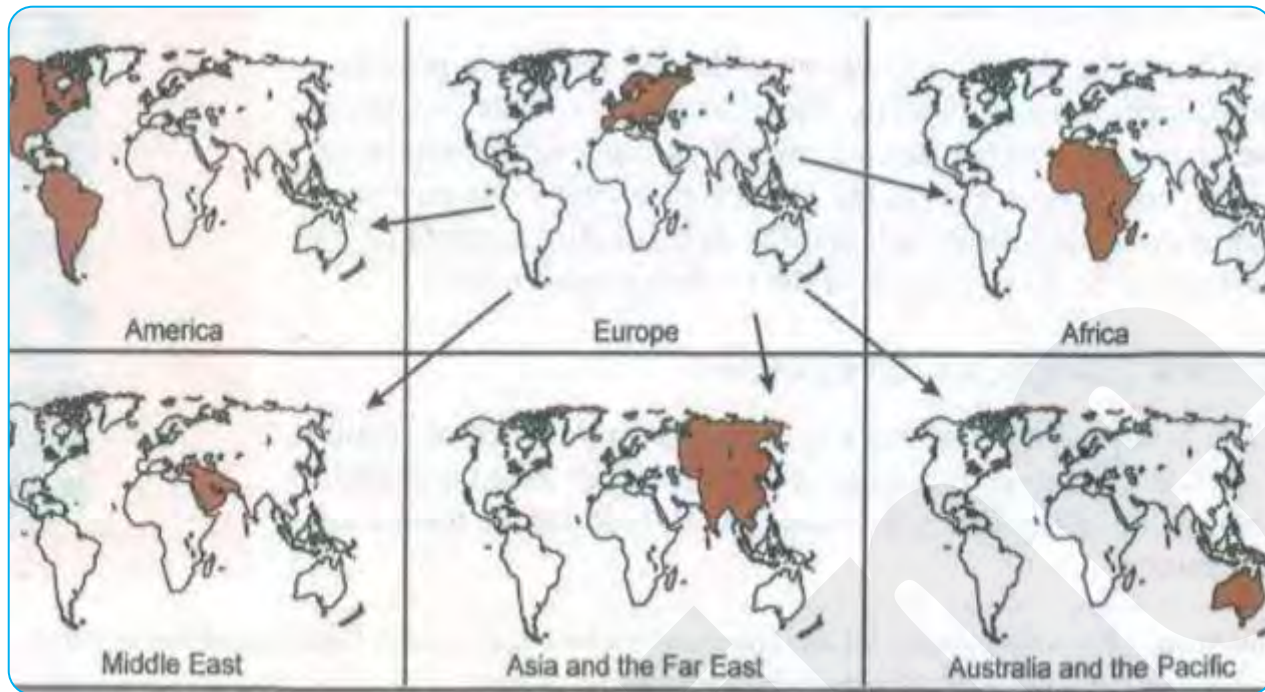
England was the first country to develop this system. It later spread to France, Germany, Russia and the rest of Europe. The Industrial Revolution began in England in the mid 18th century. The textile industry was first to be mechanised. New machines like spinning Jenny, powerloom and steam engines were invented.

MODERN PERIOD IN INDIA

With the death of Aurangzeb in 1707, his successors were too weak to maintain the unity and integrity of the vast Mughal empire and political instability became rampant throughout those territories of the Indian subcontinent that were under the Mughal rule.

- The **Battle of Plassey** and **Buxar** made the English masters of Bengal and gradually, of the whole of India. The East India Company transformed from a trading company into a political power.
- The exploitative nature of the Company's rule led to the growth of a common feeling of hatred against the British among the masses.
- Invasions of Nadir Shah (1739) and Ahmed Shah Abdali (1761) dealt a severe blow to the already weak Mughal Empire.





New geographical categories in the 18th century

- The lure of profitable trade brought the Portuguese, Dutch, French and English trading companies to the southern part of India. Intense rivalry between the British and the French for sole control over this trade resulted in the three Carnatic wars from 1744 to 1763. The British ultimately came out victorious and concentrated on extending their political control over entire India.
- Hyder Ali and his son Tipu Sultan established and consolidated the kingdom of Mysore.
- The Sikhs established their independent state under Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
- The Marathas gained prominence under the Peshwas until they lost power to Ahmed Shah Abdali in the **Third Battle of Panipat** in 1761.
- Many provincial kingdoms including Awadh, Bengal and Hyderabad declared their independence. These were known as **succession states**.
- Some of the Rajput rulers became powerful. The city of Jaipur was built by Sawai Jai Singh, the ruler of the Amber state.

SOURCES TO STUDY THE MODERN PERIOD

Period under study has a large bulk of sources. We are already familiar with the various types of sources used by a historian to write the history of a specific period. The advantages of sources for the modern period are that they are found in very large quantity and are also well preserved. Scientific methods in present world, make it easier for us to preserve the records.

The sources to study the modern period of Indian history are diversified. These sources are of the following two types:



Primary Sources

The primary source refers to the written or developed document or object during the study. These include archaeological documents, photographs, newspapers, magazines, pamphlets and videotapes.

Archaeological sources include the buildings spread across the country such as the India Gate, Gateway of India, Parliament House and the Rashtrapati Bhavan.

Original documents such as government orders and official correspondence are other important sources of historical information. These are well preserved in the archives and provide us a first-hand knowledge of events.

Newspapers, magazines, letters and pamphlets belonging to the period are also preserved in libraries and archives. They were printed in different languages in different periods of time. Some of these newspapers are printed even today. Letters are also important as they help us understand the prevailing situations from a personal point of view.

We get a detailed idea from **printed books** about the achievements in various fields such as art, literature, science and technology, medicine, etc. Books also tell us about social, economic and political conditions of a period. Biographies and autobiographies give an account of the life and thoughts of great personalities.

Films, photographs and videotapes portray lives of famous people and events. The impression left after watching such films or video clippings are of more permanent nature than the events which we see with our own eyes.

Mapping

In order to effectively administer India, the British Government felt the need to map the subcontinent for which they got various surveys Time to Think conducted. They set up at Dehradun, the Survey of India. Elaborate maps were drawn up showing the location of towns and cities with various geographical features, flora, fauna, etc.

Let's Think

How can you differentiate modern history from contemporary history?

Secondary Sources

Secondary sources are documents or recording that involve generalization, analysis, synthesis, interpretation, etc. These include reports, reviews, articles and printed books based on primary sources. The ancient Indian texts were studied and examined by the prominent Indologists such as James Mill, Max Mueller, Vincent Smith who took keen interest in Indian culture. The British tried to understand the Indian traditions, customs and norms through these texts that would help them to rule India efficiently. These colonial writers projected the view that India was a backward country and British rule was a blessing in disguise for India. However, the nationalist writers such as Bankim Chandra Chatterjee



wanted to rediscover Indian's glorious past. Dadabhai Naoroji's *Poverty and UnBritish Rule in India*, Jawahar Lal Nehru's *Discovery of India* exposed the negative impact of British rule while highlighting India's glorious past. When the national movement was at its peak, the British tried to suppress the press. However they failed. We will study the history of the last 250-300 years in the subsequent chapters regarded as the 'Modern' period.

Word Treasure

<i>renaissance</i>	:	the period of revival of art and culture
<i>humanism</i>	:	a European intellectual movement which held that though the universe is the creation of God the development and industrialization are the achievements of man.
<i>mechanisation</i>	:	the process of changing from working largely by hand or an animals to doing that work with machinery
<i>archives</i>	:	a collection of historic documents or records providing information about a place, institution or group of people
<i>rediscover</i>	:	to discover again
<i>glorious</i>	:	famous; renowned

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. In India, the death of is considered to be the beginning of the modern period.

i) Akbar	<input type="checkbox"/>	ii) Aurangzeb	<input type="checkbox"/>
iii) Babur	<input type="checkbox"/>	iv) Shah Jahan	<input type="checkbox"/>
- b. The Turks took control of the overland trade route connecting Europe to the east in

i) AD 1353	<input type="checkbox"/>	ii) AD 1653	<input type="checkbox"/>
iii) AD 1453	<input type="checkbox"/>	iv) AD 1753	<input type="checkbox"/>
- c. was the first country to develop the Industrial Revolution.

i) India	<input type="checkbox"/>	ii) Pakistan	<input type="checkbox"/>
iii) England	<input type="checkbox"/>	iv) America	<input type="checkbox"/>
- d. Who established and consolidated the kingdom of Mysore?

i) Hyder Ali	<input type="checkbox"/>	ii) Tipu Sultan	<input type="checkbox"/>
iii) Both of them	<input type="checkbox"/>	iv) None of them	<input type="checkbox"/>



2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. Who discovered America?
- b. Who discovered a new sea route to India?
- c. In which year was the Third Battle of Panipat fought?
- d. Mention the time period of three carnatic wars.
- e. By whom was 'Poverty' written?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. Give a brief overview of modern period.
- b. Describe Industrial Revolution.
- c. Which were known as succession states?
- d. Mention the primary sources that give us information about the modern period in Indian history.



- 1. How are primary sources of history different from secondary sources?
- 2. Why did the British record every aspect of their administration in India?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. The period witnessed the great voyage of discovery and explorations.
- b. The industrial progress began with the mechanisation of the industry.
- c. The gained prominence under the Peshwas.
- d. sources include the buildings spread across the country.
- e. When the national movement was at its peak, the British tried to suppress the

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. In Europe, the modern period began around the 16th century.
- b. The Industrial Revolution in England began in the mid 20th century.
- c. The Sikhs established their independent state under Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
- d. The British Government set up the survey of India at Mysore.

6. Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Gandhiji | i) explorer |
| b. Renaissance | ii) Bengal |
| c. Battle of Plassey | iii) invader |
| d. Vasco da Gama | iv) Movement |
| e. Nadir Shah | v) My experiments with Truth |





Value Based Questions

How do you see the changes brought in by the British in India? Mention 3-4 policies introduced by the British which you feel benefitted Indians.

Activity Zone

1. Organize a Debate

How important are dates in History?

2. Imagine that you are a voyager of the early modern period on a voyage to find new trade routes connecting Europe with Asia. Before undertaking the expedition what, preparations would be done by you? List them.

LET'S SUMMARISE

Characteristics of the Period

- The successors of Aurangzeb were weak and incapable rulers
- Many of their provincial kingdoms declared their independence and were named succession states
- Penetration of the European Companies and conflicts among them which included countries like Holland (Dutch), French, Portuguese and the British.
- New regional kingdoms emerged in the mid 18th century in different Parts of India
- The invasions of Nadir Shah and Ahmed Shah Abdali weakened the Mughal empire
- The Battle of Plassey and Buxar transformed the nature of the East India Company from trading company to political rulers of India
- The exploitative nature of the company's rule led to growth of a common feeling of hatred for British rule

India in the 18th century

WHERE, WHEN AND HOW

The main sources for the modern period of Indian history are as follows:

- **Primary sources** and **Secondary sources**

Europe in the 18th century

- The spirit of enquiry, i.e., **Renaissance** took shape of scientific inventors and discoveries which influenced all aspects of human life. A renewal of interest in the life of human beings led to **Humanism**
- The Turkish control over land trade route connecting Europe to the East, forced the Europeans to look for alternative sea routes to the East. Spanish and Portuguese explorers made their mark in finding navy sea routes across the globe
- The popular upsurge took the form of revolutions in England, America and France and established the right of the people to participate in their own government
- The Industrial Revolution started in England and spread to other parts of Europe ushering in the beginning of an era of imperialism and colonization





Establishment and Expansion of British Rule in India



Key Highlights

- ❖ European settlements in India
- ❖ Wars with Indian Rulers
- ❖ The Battle of Buxar (1764)
- ❖ Anglo-French Rivalry and Trade Wars
- ❖ The Battle of Plassey (1757)
- ❖ Dual System of Government (1765-1772)

Let's Start With



The years after 1500 witnessed a scramble for power among different West-European nations for the capture of various territories throughout the world, established colonies and turn them into markets with huge prospects of revenue generation. It also perhaps is the reason that the Portuguese, British, Dutch and the French made their way to India.

We have read in the previous chapter about the decline of the Mughal Empire and rise of several regional kingdoms under governors, nobles and local chieftains acting as independent rulers. However, another significant developments of the period was the arrival of traders from France and of different countries like Portugal, Netherlands, and England. We already know that Portuguese navigator Vasco da Gama discovered the sea route between India and Europe in 1498. The Portuguese were followed by the Dutch, French and English merchants who came to India to trade especially in spices and textiles. Here we will try to understand the process of how one of these groups of European traders became the rulers of India.

EUROPEAN SETTLEMENTS IN INDIA

The Portuguese

The Portuguese were the first group of European traders to reach India. In 1502, two fleets were despatched under Vasco da Gama and Estavao da Gama. It was followed by Alfonso de Albuquerque in 1503. Alfonso was the real founder of the Portuguese Empire in the East. He



succeeded Almeida, the first governor, in 1509 and captured Goa in 1510 AD from the Bijapur ruler. Goa became the center of their commercial and political power in India. The success of Portuguese traders in India triggered a race among the other European powers for a share in the rich trade. In due course, the Portuguese were forced to surrender their monopoly of the Indian trade to their rivals after a series of fierce wars.

The Dutch

The Dutch were the first to challenge the monopoly of the Portuguese. The Dutch East India Company was formed in 1602, which was granted the right to carry on trade. The first conquered Java, then found a settlement at Tranquebar, in Tanjor district in 1620, and once at Serampore in Bengal. The Dutch effectively checked the English competition in the Malay Archipelago in 1623 AD and drove them out. The British now concentrated on India. The Dutch were mainly interested in the Spice Islands in Indonesia, where they established their hold and sold their Indian settlements to the British in 1845.

English East India Company (EEIC)

Started by a group of merchants. In 1600, Queen Elizabeth I gave it a charter which granted the company the exclusive right to trade with the east. This meant that no other trading group from England could compete with the company. The company began its trading activities at the port of Surat. Indian rulers enthusiastically accommodated the newcomers in the hope of pitting them against the Portuguese. The Company defeated the Portuguese on the Sea of Surat in 1612, and revealed its naval strength. An imperial Farmman from Jahangir allowed the Company to set up a permanent factory at Surat in 1613. Two years later, the British wished to trade in Gujarat.

Jahangir granted them permission to trade in his territories at Surat on the west coast and Hoogly (in Bengal) on the east. These, and other locations on the peninsula, became centres of international trade in spices, cotton, sugar, raw silk, saltpetre etc.

The French

The French East India Company was formed in France in 1664, during the reign of Louis XIV. It was under the control of the state unlike the EEIC, which was a private commercial venture of a few merchants. It established its factories at Surat in 1668 and Masulipatnam in Pondicherry, which later became the capital of the French-occupied territory in India and was founded in 1673.

ANGLO-FRENCH RIVALRY AND TRADE WARS

The Carnatic Wars

Carnatic was a state ruled by a Nawab under the Nizam, with its capital at Arcot. The Nawab was now acting independently. Tanjore was a Maratha Jagir, where as Madurai and Tiruchirapali were both under the nawab of Carnatic. Mysore was a Hindu Kingdom under the Marathas.

To extend their territories, the Marathas attacked Carnatic and killed its Nawab, Dost Ali.

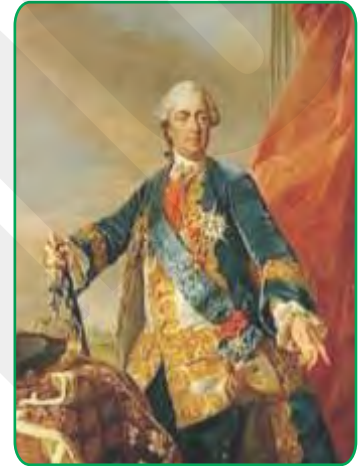


Safdar Ali became Nawab at Arcot and Chanda Sahib at Tiruchirapalli. Safdar Ali was stabbed to death in 1742 and Chanda Sahib was attacked and imprisoned by the Marathas. The Nizam appointed Anwar-ud-din as the guardian of the minor son of Safdar Ali. Anwar killed the minor prince and became the Nawab.

After the invasion of Nadir Shah, the British and the French both fought for the political power, as the weakness of the Mughal Empire was exposed. These countries were traditional rivals and thus there was intense competition between the two companies. This resulted in a war which lasted for about twenty years. It was fought in the Carnatic region in south India, because both the companies wanted to have trade monopoly. These wars are collectively known as the Carnatic Wars.

The First Carnatic War (1746-1748)

In 1740, Austrian War of Succession broke out in Europe. In this war England and France took opposite sides. This naturally resulted in war between their trading companies in India. This war is known as First Carnatic War. In the events that followed, Dupleix, the French Governor of Pondicherry, captured Fort St. George in Madras in 1746. The British tried to recapture it but failed. Meanwhile, the Austrian war of succession ended in 1748 with the signing of the Treaty of Aix-la Chappell, and so did the First Carnatic War. Under the terms of the treaty, Madras was returned to the English East India Company.



Dupleix

This war raised the prestige of Dupleix, because apart from seizing Fort St. George, he had also defeated Nawab Anwar-ud-din of Arcot. It so happened that when Dupleix captured Madras, the French naval commander returned it to the British for a bribe. Now Dupleix sought the help of Anwar-ud-din, the Nawab of Carnatic and promised to hand over Madras to him if he helped Dupleix to recapture it.

The Nawab helped Dupleix but he failed to keep his promise because, under the treaty of Aix-la-Chappell, Madras was to be returned to the English. In a battle near Adyar in Madras, the disillusioned Anwar-ud-din fought with Dupleix, but was defeated.

The Second Carnatic War (1748-1754)

It was an unofficial war fought between the trading companies of England and France, when there was peace between them in Europe. Nizam Asaf Jah died in 1748. The throne of Hyderabad was fiercely contested by his son Nasir Jung and grandson Muzaffar Jung. This resulted in civil war. The ambitious French Governor Dupleix helped Chanda Sahib, the son-in-law of Dost Ali, and Muzaffar Jung with his well-trained French army.

They succeeded in installing Muzaffar Jung as Nizam and Chanda Sahib as Nawab of Carnatic after Anwar-ud-din was killed in 1749, while fighting against the French at Ambur. In return the French received many grants as gifts as well as trading monopoly in South India.



The growing influence of the French threatened British trade in the Carnatic. The British decided to support Muhammad Ali, the son of the late Nawab Anwar-ud-din of Carnatic. The British forces, led by Robert Clive, attacked and occupied Arcot. The French were defeated and Chanda Sahib was put to death. Muhammad Ali was made the Nawab of Carnatic and the British were now in complete control of Carnatic.

Dupleix tried to regain his lost glory, but the French government recalled him in 1754. The war between two companies came to an end after the Treaty of Pondicherry, in which the British and the French restored territories captured from each other.

The Third Carnatic War (1756-1763)

The Third Carnatic war followed just two years later, in 1756. Once again it was an echo of a European war- the Seven Years War - which broke out in Europe.

The Third Carnatic war was the last in a series of 18th century conflict between the French and the British for supremacy in the region. The first two Carnatic wars were mainly fought on the Eastern Coast of southern India, But the Third Carnatic War crossed the limits of the south to reach the eastern province of Bengal. The British had defeated Nawab Siraj-ud-Daula of Bengal in the Battle of Plassey and captured the province. It helped the British because they could utilize the rich resources of Bengal to finance their Carnatic wars. Thus, they succeeded in demolishing the French plans for control of the country. The final blow was dealt in 1760, when the British forces, led by Sir Eyre Coote, defeated the French army. The French defended Pondicherry bravely but surrendered on January 16, 1761.

The Seven years war was a war that took place between 1754 and 1763 with the main conflict being on the period between 1756-1763.

Eventually, the French lost all their possessions in India. The war ended in 1763 with the treaty of Paris and with it ended the French pursuit of empire of India. As per the terms of the treaty, Pondicherry was restored to the French as a center of trade. They were not allowed to fortify it. With the end of the Third Carnatic War, French adventurism in India also ended, throwing the field open for the British conquest of the rest of India.

WARS WITH INDIAN RULERS

Bengal

The East India Company came to Bengal in 1650, when the Mughal emperor allowed the Company to settle in Bengal and trade free of duty on annual payment of 3000 taka. Within a few years, the Company's trade began to expand rapidly. In the late 17th century, their intrusion into the internal trade of Bengal became a cause of conflict. They openly ignored the rules of trade laid down by the Mughal ruler. In retaliation, Aurangzeb declared war on them in 1686 and completely routed them. The Company after realizing their mistakes, sought pardon.



Robert Clive

Ali Wardi Khan, ruler of Bengal, was a wise and able administrator. He was succeeded by his grandson Siraj-ud-Daulah in 1756. The young Nawab protested the unlawful activities of the Company. These activities mainly included unauthorized fortifications of Fort William, illegal private trade and abuse of royal farman, and shelter given to the enemies of Nawab. The Nawab sent many reminders to Calcutta for amicable settlement of the dispute but the English paid no heed to them. This infuriated the Nawab and he ordered his forces to occupy Qasimbazar factory. After the surrender of factory chief the Nawab marched upon Calcutta and captured it.

The British in Bengal asked the Madras Presidency for reinforcements. Robert Clive was sent to Calcutta with Admiral Charles Watson. They recovered Calcutta in January 1757. Siraj-ud-Daula was compelled to sign the Alinagar Treaty with the English.

The main provisions of the treaty were:

- ❖ To allow the company all the privileges sanctioned to them by the then Mughal Emperor Farrukhsiyar.
- ❖ To exempt all the English goods passing through Bengal from custom duties.
- ❖ To allow the Company to coin money in Calcutta.
- ❖ To allow the British to fortify Calcutta without any hindrance.

The treaty was humiliating for Siraj-ud-Daula, but his principal advisers and ministers advised him to accept it.

BATTLE OF PLASSEY (1757)

Robert Clive, who started his career in the Company as a clerk, was a clever man. Recognizing the weakness of the political structure in Bengal, he conspired with some of the corrupt members of the Nawab's Court such as Mir Jafar, the commander; Jagat Seth, the banker of Bengal; and Omichund, the treasure. Mir Jafar was assured by the British that he would be the next Nawab of Bengal after Siraj-ud-Daula was deposed.

The war was inevitable due to fast changing circumstances. The British accused Siraj-ud-Daula of conspiring with the French against them and Robert Clive with a small army of 8,000 European soldiers marched towards Murshidabad. In the Battle of Plassey Siraj-ud-Daula was defeated, imprisoned and later killed. Mir Jafar and his troop did not participate in the war.

Mir Jafar was made the Nawab. The Company rewarded him with the grant of the Jagirdari of 24 Parganas, and a huge sum was paid to the officers, including Clive. The Company got undisputed rights to free trade.

Mir Jafar was made the Nawab. The Company rewarded him with the grant of the Jagirdari of 24 Parganas, and a huge sum was paid to the officers, including Clive. The Company got undisputed rights to free trade.

The Battle of Plassey is an important landmark in the history of India. It marked the first



Battle of Plassey



step in the transformation of a small trading Company into the supreme political power. The British got a platform from where they eventually conquered the whole of India.



Fact File

Jawaharlal Nehru, in *The Discovery of India* (1946), describes Clive as having won the battle “by promoting treason and forgery”, and pointedly notes that British rule in India had “an unsavory beginning and something of that bitter taste has clung to it ever since.”

THE BATTLE OF BUXAR (1764)

Mir Jafar is also double crossed by the British....

During the three year rule of Mir Jafar, the Company’s Officials extorted money from the Nawab and siphoned off huge sums from the treasury. Harassed by the British, hard pressed for funds and facing a revolt in his province, it is not surprising that Mir Jafar began to turn against the Company. This only provided the British an opportunity to replace him with Mr Qasim, his son-in-law.

Let's Think

What could have been the causes for the defeat of the combined forces of Mir Qasim Shah Mam II and Shuja-ud-Daula on the battle of Buxar?



Mir Qasim

Mir Qasim was a competent ruler. As soon as he became the Nawab, he shifted his capital from Murshidabad to Monghyr, to distance himself from the constant interference of the British. He was the last ruler who tried to reassert his authority. He trimmed state expenditure, removed all the incompetent officials who were close to the British, and hired Europeans to train his army. He also introduced some administrative reforms. Soon, he came in direct conflict with the British because of the legal restrictions imposed on internal trade.

Mir Qasim ordered the abolition of all internal trade duties. This led to an attack on the city of Patna by the British and after defeating Mir Qasim, the Company reinstated Mr Jafar as Nawab. Mir Qasim joined hands with Shuja-ud-Daula,

Nawab of Awadh and Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II and their combined forces met the Company’s army at Buxar in October 1764.

The Combined forces were badly defeated by the British forces, led by Major Munroe. Mir Qasim fled by the battle and died in obscurity, probably in Delhi in 1777. The Nawab of Awadh and Shah Alam surrendered. The war came to an end by the Treaty of Allahabad. The British obtained the right to collect land revenue in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Robert Clive was appointed as the governor and commander in chief of the English army in Bengal in 1765.



DUAL SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT (1765-1772)

The battle of 1764 laid the firm ground for the establishment of British sovereignty in Bengal. Robert Clive was made the Governor of Bengal for the second time in 1765. As per the Allahabad treaty, the company acquired both Nizamat as well as Diwani over Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Robert Clive knew that collecting revenue of Diwani from a vast area like Bengal, Bihar and Orissa was not an easy task. Thus, he decided to give the responsibility of revenue collection to Indians. He appointed two Deputy Diwans, who were mainly responsible for carrying out the work of the Diwani. In this way, Robert Clive introduced the dual system of government, where the real power vested in the Company but the responsibility of administration was exercised through Indian agencies.



Robert Clive

The people of Bengal suffered immensely under this system. Even during the famine in 1770, neither the Company nor the Nawab provided any relief to the people. The Dual system of government in Bengal ended in 1772. Bengal was brought under the direct control of the Company. The new Governor-General, Warren Hastings (1772-1785), embarked on a further expansion of British influence in India.

ANNEXATION OF MYSORE

Mysore had maintained its independence ever since the end of the Vijaynagar Empire. Late on, it accepted the authority of the Mughals. At the time of Nadir Shah's invasion, Mysore tried to assert its independence. During the 18th century, the king of Mysore, Chikka krishnaraj was a puppet in the hands of his two ministers.

During the latter part of his rule, Hyder Ali, an iconic personality, rose to prominence from the ranks of an army captain. The Marathas, the British and the Nizam of Hyderabad were jealous of Hyder Ali's growing power. The British made an alliance with the Marathas and the Nizam of Hyderabad to crush the power of Hyder Ali. A series of wars was fought between Mysore and the Company, over a span of thirty-two years.



Hyder Ali and the British

INDIA BETWEEN 1772-1785

During 1772-1785 the territory of the East India Company included Bengal, Bihar, Orissa and Banaras. It also included the Northern Circars, the port of Salsette and the harbors of Madras, Bombay and other minor ports. The mughal territory included Delhi and other surrounding areas. The autonomous territory of Awadh was bound in an offensive defensive alliance with the East India Company since 1765.



The north western part of India was under the Sikh clans, who controlled the region around the Satluj, North-western Punjab, Multan, Sindh and Kashmir were under the rule of Muslim chiefs. The Marathas dominated western India, parts of central India from Delhi to Hyderabad and the land from Gujarat to Cuttack. The Nizam of Hyderabad ruled the Deccan, Hyder Ali ruled over Mysore. Tanjore and Travancore were also under Hindu rulers.

First Anglo-Mysore War (1767-1769)

Hyder Ali was a brave and diplomatic ruler. In 1767, when the alliance forces waged war against him, he decided to beat the British making peace with the Marathas and alluring the Nizam with territorial gains and together with the Nizam attacked Arcot. His son Tipu Sultan besieged Madras. The fight continued for a year and a half and the British suffered heavy losses. The British appealed for peace. A treaty was signed in 1769 in Madras and both the parties agreed to return the areas won by each other. Hyder Ali extracted a promise from the British to come to his aid if he was attacked by the Marathas or a third party. The kingdom of Mysore gained large tracks of land to the North after this war.

Second Anglo-Mysore War (1779-1784)

In 1771, during the war against the Marathas, Hyder Ali tested the loyalty of the British, but now Hyder Ali decided to take revenge against them. He got the opportunity when at the global level, the Anglo-French War started in 1778 and the British resolved to drive the French out of India. They captured Mahe, a French port, on the Western Coast in 1779 which due to its proximity to Mysore, infuriated Hyder Ali. He attacked Carnatic and reached Kanjeevaram, only 45 miles from Madras, unopposed. The incapacity of the British soldiers and officers resulted in the total destruction of the British force in September 1780.

In 1789, Tipu Sultan attacked Travencore, an ally of the British. The British forged a triple alliance with the Nizam and the Marathas. The war lasted for two years but British Major General Medows could not suppress Tipu Sultan. In 1791, Cornwallis himself took over the command of the British troops. He captured bangalore and approached Seringapatam.

In the beginning Tipu defended his capital well, and forced Cornwallis to retreat. But in February 1792, the war culminated in a resounding defeat for Mysore. Tipu was forced to sign the humiliating Treaty of Seringapatam in March 1792. This time, the British dictated their terms. Tipu Sultan had to surrender nearly half of Mysore's territories to the victorious allies (the Nizam, British and Marathas) and pay a huge war indemnity, while his two sons were taken hostage.

Fourth Mysore War (1799)

Lord Wellesley became Governor General in 1798. He introduced the system of **subsidiary alliances** under which the native state was expected to acknowledge the British authority and function entirely on British terms. Tipu Sultan refused to do so and tried to get external help to oust the British. He built up a large army and asked the French to support him. Wellesley attacked Mysore in 1799. Tipu fought bravely and was killed in action against the British at Seringapatam. The fourth war of short duration ended with the death of Tipu on May 4, 1799.



After Tipu Sultan's death, Mysore was restored to the dependent of the former ruler who had been overthrown by Hyder Ali. The new ruler accepted a subsidiary alliance. The Nizam of Hyderabad was the first Indian ruler to accept the system of subsidiary alliance.

SUBSIDIARY ALLIANCE AND THE GROWTH OF COLONIAL ARMY

Subsidiary Alliance was introduced by Lord Wellesley to secure British supremacy in India. The system was practically forced on a ruler who faced constant threats from other states. According to this alliance the Indian rulers were not supposed to keep their independent armed forces as they were protected by the Company. However, they had to pay for the armed forces. Part of a territory was taken away as a penalty if the ruler failed to pay. The Indian ruler was also to keep a British resident in the court who in turn interfered with the internal administration of the state if it was against the Company's interests. So, the Indian states lost their independence. The states which came under British control through this alliance were Awadh, Hyderabad, Gwalior, Indore, Udaipur, Jodhpur, and Jaipur.

ANNEXATION OF THE MARATHA STATE

After the control of Carnatic and Deccan regions, Lord Wellesley turned his attention to the Marathas. The Marathas had emerged as a possible alternative to the Mughals. But this resurgence was short-lived. Four Maratha chiefs—Gaekwad of Baroda, Bhonsle of Nagpur, Scindhia of Gwalior and Holkars of Indore declared their independence. The British took advantage of the internal conflicts within the Maratha clans. After forty-three years (1775-1818) and three wars, they ultimately managed to bring the Marathas under their control.

The First Anglo-Marathas War (1775-1782)

Peshwa Madhav Rao died in 1772, and was succeeded by his brother Narayan Rao. He was killed by his uncle Raghunath Rao, who then declared himself Peshwa. The British also supported his claim, but the Marathas backed Narayan Rao's son Madhav Rao II. A civil war broke out. The Marathas, led by Nana Phadnavis, a great Maratha minister, fought against Raghunath Rao and his British allies and defeated them in 1779.

The British was forced to sign the Treaty of Wadgaon by which they had to surrender all the territories acquired by the Company since 1773. Warren Hastings, the Governor General, attempted to restore the prestige of the Company and sent a strong force which captured Surat in 1779 and Gwalior in 1780. The Treaty of Salbai (1782) brought an end to the War. The treaty resulted in a relative peace between the Marathas and the Company until the second Anglo-Maratha war broke out.

The Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803-1805)

Peshwa Madhav Rao II died in 1796 and was succeeded by Baji Rao II. Maharaja Scindhia and Nana Phadnavis were the capable leaders who tried to keep intact the Maratha power in spite of their conflicts. After their death, the Maratha chiefs tried to bring the Peshwa under their influence. Amongst them, the most powerful were Daulat Rao Scindhia of Gwalior and Jaswant Rao Holkar of Indore. In 1801-1802, Scindhia



Nana Phadnavis

joined Peshwa Baji Rao against Holkar and a war was fought between the two for supremacy over the Peshwa.

Jaswant Rao Holkar defeated the combined forces in 1802. Peshwa Baji Rao II fled to Bassein and sought the help of the British. A treaty was signed in 1803 with the British, which allowed them a legitimate right to interfere in the affairs of the Marathas. The British forces occupied Poona, the capital of Peshwas. The British installed the Peshwa at Poona and drove out the Holkars.

Lord Wellesley the Governor General of India, then decided to bring Marathas under the Subsidiary system. The Gaekwads were the first to sign the subsidiary treaty with the British. Scindhia was forced to sign a treaty by which he ceded the Ganga-Jamuna Doab, Ahmednagar and Broach. Bhonsle accepted the overlordship of the British and gave up claims on Cuttack, Balasore and parts of the Central Provinces (now Madhya Pradesh). This war dealt a severe blow to the power and prestige of the Marathas.



Lord Wellesley

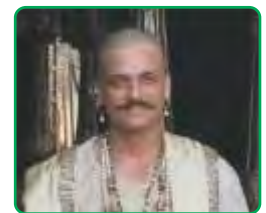
Holkar sought refuge in the court of Maharaja Ranjit Singh, the Sikh ruler of Punjab. In the meantime, Lord Wellesley was recalled to England. His policy of wars and expansion proved very expensive to the British government. The next Governor General was George Barlow. He made peace with Holkar and signed a treaty in 1806 by which his territories were restored to him. Similarly, the British revised the treaties made with Bhonsle and Scindhia and returned their territories. The British once again reverted to the policy of non-intervention.

The Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817-1818)

The last Maratha war was fought during the period when Lord Hastings was the Governor-General.

Peshwa Baji Rao II realised his mistake of signing the Treaty of Bassein with the British. He felt suffocated, and to free himself, he decided to wage a war against the British with the help of other Maratha chiefs. Hastings came to know about this plan and forced the Peshwa to sign the Treaty of Poona (1817), by which the Peshwa had to renounce the leadership of Maratha chiefs and had to surrender Konkan to the British. Similarly Scindhia was forced to sign a treaty at Gwalior (1817) to help the British against the Pindaris. Bhonsle had already signed a treaty in 1816.

Despite these treaties, the Marathas chiefs were determined to make the last attempt to regain their independence. Under Peshwa Baji Rao II, they declared war against the British. Then attacked and burnt the residency at Kirkee, near Poona. But finally they were defeated in this third and last war against the British. The British deposed the Peshwa and annexed all his territories. The Peshwa was deported to Bithur, near Kanpur. Bhonsle and Holkar also surrendered and accepted the Subsidiary Alliance.



Peshaw Baji Rao

The Maratha power in India was shattered for ever and the British emerged as the supreme power in India.



ANNEXATION OF PUNJAB

Maharaja Ranjit Singh, was known as the 'Lion of Punjab'. He was the founder of an independent Sikh Kingdom in Punjab. He emerged as a dynamic Sikh leader. He made Lahore his capital and by 1823, he extended his kingdom from the Satluj to Peshawar and from Kashmir up to the borders of Sindh. He was a brave soldier, an able statesman and a tolerant ruler. He ruled for over 40 years.

The First Anglo-Sikh war (1845-1846)

After the death of Maharaja Ranjit Singh in 1839, the Sikh state witnessed a period of political instability as there were many claimants to the throne. In 1843, Dalip Singh, the youngest son of Ranjit Singh became the ruler under the protection of his mother, Rani Jindan. But real power remained with the army, which Ranjit Singh had organized along European lines.

The British were never great friends of the Sikhs and the first Anglo-Sikh battle started when the Sikh army crossed the Satluj. Battles were fought at Mudki, Geroz Shah and Sabraon in which the British got victory. For the next two years, the Punjab was a British protectorate. The British army occupied Lahore. The Treaty of Lahore (1846) was force on the Sikhs, according to which the British occupied Jalandhar Doab. The Sikh army was reduced in size and the Sikhs had to pay for the maintenance of the British army. Dalip Singh was recognized as the ruler of Lahore. Besides paying a heavy war indemnity, they were forced to hand over Kashmir to the British, who sold it to Raja Gulab Singh Dogra of Jammu for £ 1,000,000.

The Second Anglo Sikh War (1848-1849)

The Lahore treaty was humiliating for the Sikh. The Second Sikh War was triggered by a revolt of the Sikh chief, Diwan Mul Raj, the Governor of Multan in April 1848. Instead of suppressing the revolt. Lord Dalhousie declared war against the Sikhs in October 1848. Battles were fought at Ram Nagar, Chillianwala and Gujarat. The decisive battle was fought in Gujarat on February 13, 1849 in which the Sikhs were completely defeated. Lord Dalhousie annexed the Punjab to the British Empire. It was during this time that the famous **Koh-i-Noor** was taken away and was presented to Queen Victoria.



The Second Anglo-Sikh War
(1848-1849)

MAHARAJA RANJIT SINGH



Maharaja Ranjit Singh was the founder of the great Sikh state. As a child, Ranjit Singh had an attack of smallpox and lost one eye permanently. Though not handsome in appearance, he had a magnetic personality. Once his foreign minister, Fakir Azizuddin, was asked by Lord Auckland that which of the Maharaja's eyes was missing. He replied, "The Maharaja is like the sun, who has only one eye, the splendours and the luminosity of his single eye is so much that I have never dared to look at the other eye". Lord Auckland, pleased with his reply, gifted his wristwatch to Azizuddin.



LORD DALHOUSIE AND HIS POLICIES FOR EXPANSION

Lord Dalhousie was the Governor General of India from 1848 to 1856. He believed in direct British administration of region of province rather than by proxy, by supporting the Indian rulers. He annexed a large number of native states to the British Empire and introduced many useful reforms. He is, therefore, called the 'maker of Modern India'.

Lord Dalhousie's policy of annexation was known as the **Doctrine of Lapse**. Governor General Lord Dalhousie introduced Doctrine of Lapse as a means of extending their empire. According to this policy, if any ruler did not have a natural heir to the throne, he had to take permission from the British to adopt a heir. The territory of the ruler without a male heir was annexed if the adoption was refused as the British had the right to sanction or refuse such an adoption. Jhansi, Nagpur, Satara, Udaipur, Jaitpur, and Sambhalpur were annexed under this policy.



Lord Dalhousie

Another method of annexation used by Lord Dalhousie was **abolition of titles and pensions** of childless rulers upon their death. Their territories were then annexed. Thus Arcot and Tanjore were annexed to the British Empire. The adopted son of the Peshwa, Nana Sahib was refused the pension by the British. Similarly, after the death of the Nawab of Carnatic, the British did not pay pension to his relatives. The imperial title of the Mughal Emperor was discontinued after Bahadur Shah II.

Maladministration of states by Indian rulers was another excuse for subjugation. The Nawabs of Awadh had become totally dependent on the British government. They neglected the administration and the welfare of their subjects. Dalhousie annexed Awadh in 1856 under this policy. He also captured a portion of Sikkim in 1850 because its ruler had ill-treated the Company's men. Thus, Dalhousie annexed different regions of India to expand the British Empire, but he also introduced many useful reforms.

Reforms

Lord Dalhousie introduced various reforms during his rule to improve the condition of India. He proved his worth in matters of administration by the demarcation of various departments of the administrative machinery and appointment of Lieutenant Governor for Bengal. He introduced the non-regulated system, where a Chief Commissioner was appointed in the non-regulation province. Punjab and Awadh were non-regulation provinces. They were directly under the control of the Governor General through commissioners.

During his time Railways and Telegraph were introduced in India to improve the means of communication. He began building many public utility structures and started Public Work Department, which undertook the work of constructing roads, bridges, and irrigation works such as canals, etc. The extension of the Grand Trunk Road from Peshawar to Calcutta was started during his tenure. Old canals were repaired and the new Ganga canal was



constructed for irrigation purposes. In the educational field, Dalhousie gave the recommendations to the Wood's Despatch for improving the education system in India.

OTHER ADMINISTRATIVE POLICIES AND REFORMS

Warren Hastings was appointed the Governor of Bengal in 1772. Two years later, he was made the Governor General of Bengal. He could not expand the possessions of the Company in India. However, he stopped the pension of Emperor Shah Alam and reduced the pension of the Nawab of Bengal from 32 lakh to 16 lakh rupees per year.

Lord Cornwallis became the Governor General of India in 1786. He introduced the system of Permanent Settlement of revenue in Bengal in 1793. According to this system, Zamindars were given the permanent right to collect taxes from the peasants. It assured the Company of a fixed income from land revenue every year. But it gave birth to a class of absentee landlords.

Cornwallis also introduced Judicial and Police reforms. He set his own example of honesty and created a spirit of honesty among the Company's servants. He developed a Europeanised state within the framework of Indian tradition. His reorganisation of the entire system of administration marked the beginning of the Civil Services in India.



Lord Cornwallis

Sir John Shore was appointed the Governor General in 1793. He followed a policy of peace and non-intervention.



Lord Wellesley

Lord Wellesley was Governor General of India from 1798 to 1805. He wanted to make the British, masters of India. He followed three methods to achieve his aims.

1. The system of Subsidiary Alliances.
2. Expansion through wars.
3. Annexing the territories of previously subordinated rulers.

After Lord Wellesley, Sir George Barlow (1805-1807) and Lord Minto (1807-1813) were the next Governor Generals. But they preferred the policy of non-intervention and succeeded in avoiding major wars in India.

Lord Hastings was the Governor General of India from 1813 to 1823. He waged a war against Nepal and expanded the British Empire.

Word Treasure

<i>charter</i>	:	a written and signed declaration
<i>monopoly</i>	:	exclusive control over the supply or trade of a product
<i>diwani</i>	:	right to collect revenue from a particular area
<i>annexation</i>	:	restoration of property or rights
<i>alliance</i>	:	a formal agreement between two or more groups



Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The defeated the Portuguese on the Sea of Surat in 1612.
- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| i) Mughals | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) British | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Marathas | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) French | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. The East India Company came to in 1650.
- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| i) Mysore | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Bengal | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Madras | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Pondicherry | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. Robert Clive started his career in the Company as a
- | | | | |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| i) Viceroy | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Governor | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Clerk | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Soldier | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. was assured by the British that he would be the next Nawab of Bengal after Siraj-ud-Daula was deposed.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Mir Qasim | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Mir Jafar | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Muhammad Ali | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Murshid Quli Khan | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. The were the first to challenge the monopoly of the portuge.
- | | | | |
|------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) French | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) British | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Dutch | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) East India Company | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- f. The French East India Company was forced in France in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1062 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1064 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1063 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 1066 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- g. Lord Wellesley became Governor General in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1784 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1789 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1798 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 1905 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- How did the European traders reach India?
- How was the East India Company formed?
- What do you understand by the term 'fortification'?
- Who was Mir Qasim?
- In which year was the Battle of Plassey fought?
- What led to the annexation of Mysore by the British?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- What were the main reasons for rivalry between the English and the French?
- What were the causes of Battle of Plassey?
- What do you know about the Third Carnative War?
- Why was the English East India Company established?



- e. What do you know about dual-system government?
- f. Discuss the importance of the fourth Anglo-Maratha War.
- g. How did Lord Dalhousie expand the British territories in India?



1. What attracted the European trading companies to settle down in India? Do you think trading was the only motive? Give reason to support your answer.
2. Do you think that the course of Indian history would have been different, if the British had not defeated the combined forces of Awadh, Bengal and the Mughals? Why so?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. was the real founder of the Portuguese Empire in the East.
- b. Mysore was a kingdom under the Marathas.
- c. Third Carnatic war crossed the limits of the South to reach the eastern province of
- d. The Battle of Buxar was fought in the year
- e. The Dual system of government in Bengal ended in
- f. Lord introduced a policy of annexation called the Doctrine of Lapse.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. The British were the first European settlers in India.
- b. The French East India Company was formed during the reign of Louis XIV.
- c. Anwar-ud-din killed the minor son of Safdar Ali and became the Nawab.
- d. In Australian war of succession, England and France supported the same group.
- e. The Dutch East India company was founded in 1602.

6. Define.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| a. First Carnatic war | b. Farman |
| c. Seven Year's War | d. Battle of Plassey |
| e. Diwani | f. Subsidiary Alliance |
| g. Doctrine of Lapse | h. Subsidiary Alliance |



Value Based Questions

1. Why did Mir Qasim not fight against the British in the Battle of Plassey?

Activity Zone

On a political map of the world, mark and label all the important European countries which came to India as traders.





Rural Life and Society



Key Highlights

- ❖ Rural Indian Economy Before the British
- ❖ British Policy till 1793
- ❖ British Land Revenue Policies and Indian Agriculture
- ❖ Growth of Commercial Crops
- ❖ Peasant Revolts

Let's Start With



The British rule had pronounced and profound impact on India. There was hardly any section of society or corner of country which could escape the long arms of British colonialism. India being a country with predominance in agriculture, any impact of government on the people turned out to be essentially the impact of government on the village. As the changing life in Indian village, marked best the impact of the British administration on the Indian people. The study has been made to characterize the Indian villages in British period.

The East India Company established its hegemony in Bengal after the Battle of Plassey in 1757. Unlike the Mughal rulers, they were only interested in exploiting Indian resources for the benefit of British industrialists and traders. The conquest and exploitation of India was an important means of capitalist development in Britain. Money siphoned off from India strengthened Britain's economy and elevated their social and political system. The exploitation of the Indian market and of India raw materials supported England's industrial expansion in the 19th century.

RURAL INDIAN ECONOMY BEFORE THE BRITISH

When the British came to India, villages were self-sufficient units. They needed very little from the outside world except items like salt and clothes. Each village was a well-knit society comprising professions suited to the village economy. While peasants tilled the land, many supporting occupations like carpenter, potter, weaver, priest, etc. performed all the services



needed by the village. The farmer owned the land he cultivated and he could not be evicted. He paid a small part of his produce to the king. In case of crop failure due to natural calamities, such as floods droughts, the king reduced the land revenue and sometimes totally wrote it off. The coming of the British changed the scenario.

British Policy till 1793

Ijaradari System

In, 1765, when the East India Company obtained Diwani of Bihar, Bengal and Orissa (now Odisha), they continued with the traditional methods of revenue collection. But, the officials of the Company usurped huge amounts from the peasants unofficially, which added to their personal wealth.

However, till the 1770s, the Company's income from land revenue was too little, which reduced further because of a massive famine. Hence; Warren Hastings introduced the *ijaradari system*, according to which the right to collection was given to the highest bidder for a period of five years. These bidders were called **contractors**.

However, this system was a failure because:

- bidding was often not related to the actual productivity of the land.
- the *ijaradars* were not interested in making improvements in land as it was auctioned periodically.
- the peasant's were exploited by the connectors to extract more and more revenue.

The Permanent Settlement

In 1793, Lord Cornwallis introduced the Permanent Settlement in Bihar, Bengal and Orissa (now Odisha). As per this system, the landowners or the *zamindars* obtained hereditary rights over their land. The farmers were diminished to the status of tenants. The *zamindars* had to pay a fixed amount of land revenue every year to the Company even if there were adverse conditions such as flood or drought, failing which, their land would be auctioned off. Whatever remained with the *zamindar* after paying the revenue was his profit. The land revenue was fixed at roughly fifty per cent of the total produce.

For the East India Company

Permanent Settlement proved to be advantageous as :

- the Company was assured of regular income even during adverse climatic conditions.
- the new landlords became a class of loyalists for the Company.
- the British could use the new landlords for consolidating their political authority as well.
- income of the Company increased.

Effects on the Peasants

- The actual cultivators of the land were left at the mercy of the *zamindars*, who often extracted exorbitant rates from the cultivators.
- The peasants had to pay the revenue even if the crops failed; hence they were forced to borrow money from the moneylender at high interest. Their land was **mortgaged** and



they had to look for an alternate employment and even migrate to cities in case of non-payment of loans.

- At many places, moneylenders replaced the old landlords, who took no interest in improving agricultural production. Many of them were **absentee landlords**, who leased out their land to tenants and lived in cities.
- The method of cultivation continued to be primitive as neither the British nor the landlord took any interest in improving agricultural methods or yields.
- To gain maximum revenue, the farmers were forced to cultivate cash crops such as indigo and cotton, instead of rice or wheat. This caused widespread famine-like situation.



Thomas Munro

The Ryotwari Settlement (1820)

Sir Thomas Munro, the Governor of Madras province introduced the system of *Ryotwari* settlement in the Madras presidency. It was later extended to the Bombay presidency.

According to this system the peasants or the *ryots* were considered the owners of the land and land revenue was collected directly from them. The rate of revenue was fixed at roughly half of the total produce. It was settled for a period of 30 years after which it could be revised.

Though the *ryotwari* settlement recognized the peasants as the owners of the land, high rate of revenue made them dependent on moneylenders.

The Mahalwari Settlement (1830)

This system was introduced in western Uttar Pradesh, parts of Madhya Pradesh and Punjab. Under this system, the land revenue settlement was made for the entire estate or mabal. The *talukdar* or the head of the village had to collect the revenue from the villages and hand it over to the Company. The rate of revenue was roughly half of the total agricultural production, which was subject to a periodic revision. However, even under this system, the condition of the peasants remained pitiable as the head of the village retained the right of extracting revenue.

BRITISH LAND REVENUE POLICIES AND INDIAN AGRICULTURE

The British did experiment with various land revenue settlements in different parts of the country; all of them were aimed at extracting maximum revenue. Hence, the condition of the peasants became miserable.

- The self-sufficiency of the villages was destroyed. There was a shift towards the cultivation of commercial crops such as sugarcane, jute, oil seeds, cotton, groundnuts, etc. These crops were called **cash crops** as they could be easily bought and sold in the market.
- Famines continued to be a regular feature as land productivity fell.
- Land became a saleable commodity because, in times of need, the peasant could mortgage or sell it.



- *Beggars* or bonded labourers increased as the peasants were forced to sell their land due to the high rate of revenue.
- Agriculture continued to be stagnant as neither the British nor the landlords took steps to improve it. They did not provide irrigation facilities, seeds, ploughs, fertilizers and did not try to educate the farmers.

GROWTH OF COMMERCIAL CROPS

The self-sufficiency of the Indian villages was completely broken under the British. Indian peasants were forced to grow commercial crops such as tea, coffee, indigo, jute, oilseeds, sugarcane, mulberry, rubber, etc. Many of these crops were raw materials for industries of Britain. These crops were grown on large estates called **plantations**, owned by the Europeans. The plantations were mainly in Assam, Bengal and Kerala.

The oppressive land-revenue settlements coupled with plantation agriculture made peasants and other tribal groups rise up in rebellion against the British.

PEASANT REVOLTS

The dispossessed and oppressed peasants led the revolts in Bihar and Bengal against the indigo planters, *zamindars* and moneylenders. These were easily crushed.



Fact File

The term 'Peasant Revolt' connects a granial uprisings on aimed at eliminating landlords and by extention the foreign system that introduced and sustained landlordism.



The indigo planters built buildings like this for buying and selling of indigo. Often, these emerged as torture cells of hapless peasants. These buildings are infamous in history as Neelkuthi.

Indigo Revolt

The word indigo is derived from the Greek word *indikon* and Latin word *indicum*, meaning 'from India'. Indigo was a natural blue dye used for colouring clothes. It was exported from India from ancient times. Indigo was the first crop to be grown on British plantations as the British required regular supply of indigo for its textile factories. The indigo planters gave loans to the cultivators for cultivating crops, which they had to sell to various factories at low prices. Later, the planters informed the peasants that loans could be repaid only if they supply indigo to them at fixed rates. Violation of this evoked large-scale oppressive measures such as holding the cultivator and his family as prisoners, burning his house, etc. This inhuman oppression on indigo cultivators forced them to revolt against the British in the Nadia district of Bengal in 1859.

The revolt was led by Bishnucharan Biswas and Digambar Biswas. Its other popular leaders



were Kader Molla of Pabna and Rafique Mondal of Malda. The British suppressed this revolt mercilessly. However, the planters were finally forced to shut down their workshops and the British put a ban on indigo cultivation.

Impact of Peasant Revolts

1. Peasant movements or riots were not a threat to the British rule but proved that the Indian peasants' reactions were instant and spontaneous to every situation.
2. Despite of brutal torture, the peasants always resisted the British efforts to get control and power in the name of maintaining law and order.
3. Their faith, their courage and heroism and their willingness to make immense sacrifices were of no match against the imperialist power, armed with the latest weapons and the resources of a world-wide empire.
4. The popular movements and rebellions of the 19th century did, however, reveal the immense sources of resistance to imperialism that lay dormant among Indians.
5. These revolts generated great awareness among the Indian agrarian classes about their rights.

Punjab: Case Study

Punjab was annexed by the British in 1849. As Punjab is known as the land of five rivers, it was very fertile. The British wanted to ensure the loyalty of the **martial lat-Sikh** population of the newly conquered province and at the same time, enjoy maximum benefits from the fertile lands. It was also important for the British to gain support of the people of Punjab because of its strategic position. So, the British economic policies in Punjab were largely non-oppressive. Cotton cultivation was encouraged in this region due to its demand as raw material for cotton textiles. Irrigation was extended here; wastelands were brought under cultivation resulting in increasing agricultural productivity and reducing landlessness and indebtedness. Thus, under the British, the agricultural prosperity increased in Punjab. Consequently the British did not face rebellions from this area. People of Punjab did not play a major role in the revolt of 1857 as well.

Word Treasure

<i>hegemony</i>	: dominance; leadership
<i>capitalist</i>	: a person with a lot of money, property etc.
<i>massive famine</i>	: a widespread scarcity of food
<i>advantageous</i>	: creating favourable circumstances
<i>primitive</i>	: ancient
<i>plantations</i>	: large estates growing commercial crops

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The East India Company established its hegemony in Bengal the
- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Battle of Panipat | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Battle of Plassey | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Battle of Buxar | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Battle of Mysore | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. The East India Company obtained. Diwani of Bihar, Bengal and Odisha in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1747 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1750 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1756 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 1765 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. The Ryotwari settlement was introduced in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1793 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1820 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1830 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 1765 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. introduced the Ryotwari settlement.
- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Warren Hastings | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Lord Clive | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Sir Thomas Munro | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Lord Cornwallis | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. Punjab was annexed by the British in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1804 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1810 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1849 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 1894 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- Who introduced the *ijaradari* system?
- Who introduced the Permanent Settlement in Bihar, Bengal and Orissa? When?
- When and Where was the Maharwani Settlement Introduced?
- Who were *ijaradars*?
- Name the three land revenue settlements introduced by the British.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Write the main features of the Permanent Settlement.
- How was the Mahawari System different from the Ryotwari System?
- Why did the cultivation of commercial crops lead to peasant revolts?
- What are the impact of peasant revolts?
- Write down a brief case study of Punjab.



- 'The permanent settlement was advantageous for the Britishers but not for the Indians.' Justify the statement.
- In what ways were political domination and economic explanation by the British interrelated.



4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. started the *Ijaradari* system.
- b. In the Mahalwari system, revenue was collected from
- c. In the, the *zamindars* were the permanent owners of the land.
- d. was a regular blue dye used for colouring cloth.
- e. gives us a glimpse of the conditions of Indigo planters.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. The East India Company obtained Diwani of Bihar, Bengal and Orissa in 1765.
- b. The ryots leased out their land to tenants and lived in cities.
- c. The bidders were also called absentee landlords.
- d. Velu Thampi, the *Diwan* of Travancore, rose in rebellion in 1808.
- e. Commercial crops are also called cash crops.

6. Match the following.

Column 'A'

- 1. Thomas Munro
- 2. The Mahalwani System
- 3. The Ryotwari Settlement
- 4. The Permanent Settlement
- 5. Annexation of Punjab

Column 'B'

- (i) 1849
- (ii) 1820
- (iii) 1830
- (iv) Governor of Madras Province
- (v) 1793

7. Who am I?

- a. I was introduced in Bihar, Bengal and Orissa in 1793.
- b. I leased out my land and lived in cities.
- c. I was the revenue system started by Warren Hastings.
- d. I was the first crop to be grown on British plantation.
- e. I was the person to whom the poor came for money.
- f. I am the other name for landlord.



Value Based Questions

Do peasants face exploitation even today? Do you think it is fair to neglect their needs while the rest of the world marches ahead? Comment.

Activity Zone

Prepare a list of Peasan's Revolt which occurred between 1750 to 1857 and write about them in brief.





Colonialism and Tribal Societies



Key Highlights

- ❖ Indigenous people
- ❖ Tribal Revolts
- ❖ Changes in Tribal societies during the British Rule
- ❖ Study of Government Record

Let's Start With



The wealth, resources and spices of India attracted many western traders. Such as the Portuguese, the Dutch, the English or the British, the French, etc. Among them the British appeared to be the most powerful. As time passed, this trading company established their control all over India. With the arrival of the British, a lot of changes took place in the Indian society. It changed the face of India completely. Every sphere of the Indian society was influenced by them. It affected the rural and tribal society of India very much. The face of the Indian tribal society was completely changed by them.

The British rule affected all sections of the Indian Society. They did not do anything substantial to benefit the country except diverting India's vast wealth to the home country by ruthlessly exploiting its rich natural and human resources. The exploitation of the natives by the Company was not confined to cities and villages alone. It penetrated into remote and relatively untouched tribal areas.

INDIGENOUS PEOPLE

'Indigenous people' is term commonly used to describe tribal people. The term 'tribal' refers to aboriginals or Adivasis . This word is derived from Adi, means beginning or earliest time, and vasi, means resident of ; i.e, the original inhabitants. The term became popular only after India got independence. Adivasis are different not only from the other Indian



populations (who are called the 'caste' populations), but also from one another in dialect, race, socio-economic and cultural patterns. They were relatively free from external interference during pre-colonial times. But they never lived in complete isolation from the rest of the Indian society, though their contact was limited.

Most of the tribes are completely ignorant of the world outside and were contented with their own customs, beliefs and culture. The tribals live in small clusters of huts and have a strong sense of community. Generally, there is a common meeting place in each village where dances and religious ceremonies are held. Each village has a well defined boundary. A village committee generally enforces the rules of the community, organises festivals and rites, and settles disputes. It consists of the leading members of each family. It chooses a village chief, who is generally the most capable and respected man in the village.



Tribals are aboriginal people on the basis of their anthropological characteristics.

The Tribal women are fond of jewellery, which is handmade and very exotic. They use silver ornaments, small pieces of wood, glass, peacock feathers, copper for making jewellery and different kinds of wild flowers and leaves to decorate themselves. Tribals are fond of diverse forms of music and dance. Their settlements often resound and reverberate with the beats of the drum. From these, there are official documents such as petitions of individual peasants and tribals, records of administrative proceedings and reports and judgments of enquiry commissions. Gazettes, newspapers of those times and biographies also help to substantiate the facts.

CHANGES IN TRIBAL SOCIETIES DURING THE BRITISH RULE

- The tribals were dispossessed of their lands when they failed to pay the land revenue. They had to work as wage labourers.
- Some of the tribals were allowed to retain land but had to pay high land revenue failing which their land was confiscated.
- They forced many of the tribals to adopt settled agriculture as they found it difficult to monitor the pastoralists and get regular land revenue from them.
- They made tremendous changes in the forest laws by declaring forests as the state property and restricting the use of forest resources or practising shifting agriculture. They were even forced to abandon their living spaces in the reserved forests.
- The money lenders and traders often cheated and exploited the tribals who were dependent on them for certain things or for short term loans.
- The tribal chiefs, who earlier enjoyed their power and authority, became mere agents of the British and their survival depended upon British mercy.



- Exploitation of labour became synonymous with the plantation industry. They were often forced to borrow money from the moneylenders at high rates of interest. In such extreme conditions, they rose up in revolt against the British rule.
- Their main economic activities were hunting, gathering and shifting cultivation. During the British rule, the Europeans grew indigo, jute, tea, coffee, sugarcane and oilseeds on large tracts of forested land or plantations. The establishment of plantations displaced the tribal population and also took away their source of livelihood. They were forced to work on plantations for meagre wages.

TRIBAL REVOLTS

The British came in contact with the tribes when they were trying to consolidate their empire in India. Soon, they were followed by traders, money-lenders and landlords who established themselves under the protection of the colonial authority and took advantage of the new judicial system to deprive the tribes of large tracts of their land. Thus, outsiders become their exploiters and masters. But this incursion was not acceptable to the tribal communities.

As soon as the British took over Eastern India, tribal revolts broke out to challenge outsiders intrusion. In the early years of colonisation, no other community in India offered such stout resistance to British rule or faced such tragic consequences as did the numerous Adivasi communities of what are now Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh Odisha and Bengal.

In 1772, the Paharia revolt broke out which was followed by a five-year uprising led by Tilka Manjhi who was hanged in Bhagalpur in 1785. The tribal uprisings spread eastward to the neighbouring Tamar areas of the Munda tribes. They too rose in revolt in 1811 and 1813. In the next two decades, revolts took place in Singhbhum, Gumla, Birbhum, Bankura, Manbhum and Palamau, followed by the great Kol Risings of 1832 and the Khewar and Bhumij revolts (1832-34).



Fact File

In independent India, the 'excluded' and 'partially excluded' areas were transformed into sixth and fifth schedule areas respectively.



Sindhu-Kanu of Santhal Revolt

In 1820, the **Ho** tribal peasants of **Chhotanagpur** in Bihar rose against the British rulers, the local money-lenders and Zamindars but were soon suppressed by the British. The Hos rose again in 1821. This time, they were well-organised and strong enough to besiege the fort of Chinepoor, with the entire Kolhan area at their mercy. The Zamindars and the Raja of Porahat appealed to the British for help, and the Ho uprising was ruthlessly crushed. In fact, the



Chhotanagpur area remained a centre of turbulent uprisings throughout the 19th century. The Oraons, another tribal community, rebelled in 1820, 1832, 1890.

The Kols organised an insurrection in 1831-32, which was directed mainly against Government officers and money-lenders. The Mahajans (money-lenders) extracted heavy interest and many Kols became bonded labourers for life. The intensity of the Kol/rebellion can be measured from the fact that reinforcements had to be rushed from Calcutta, Danapur and Benaras to suppress it.

The Santhal Rebellion of 1855-56

One of the most important Adivasi revolt against the British rule before 1857 was the Santhal hul (or Santhal Revolt). The Santhal region extended from Bhagalpur in Bihar in the north to Odisha in the south, the centre stretching from Hazaribagh to the borders of Bengal. The revolt was mainly against the permanent settlement of Lord Cornwallis, but there were a number of specific grievances that forced the Santhals to rebel against an inefficient government. The main causes were:

1. The grasping manner of merchants and money-lenders in their transactions with Santhals,
2. The misery caused by the unjust system of allowing personal and hereditary bondage for debt,
3. The unparalleled corruption and extortion of the police in aiding and abetting the money-lenders, and,
4. The impossibility of Santhals obtaining redress from the courts.

The Santhal rebellion was finally crushed by the British troops. About 10,000 rebels were killed in the unequal contest between tribals armed with bows and arrows on the one side and soldiers equipped with firearms, on the other. A year later, numerous Adivasi leader played significant Revolt of 1857.

The Rampa Rebellion

Rampa Rebellion of 1857 was an insurrection by the hill tribes in the Rampa region of Vishakapatnam district against the British government of the Madras Presidency.

Let's Think

Why, according to you, Birsa Munda wanted to revive the tribal society besides revolting the British rule?

The extortions and the oppressiveness of a corrupt police and ruler were the immediate causes of the Rampa Rebellion. The operation of the civil law of the country was an additional grievance of the tribesmen, The ignorance of court proceedings further aggravated their misery as it enabled traders from the lowlands to make unfair contracts with them. The hill people laid the blame for such injustice on the government and its regulations. They decided that their only remedy lay in rising against the authorities.



Munda rebellion

The Munda rebellion was one of the most powerful tribal revolts of the late nineteenth century. Concentrated in the Chotanagpur region, it was led by **Birsa Munda**. The 'ulgulan' or the 'Great Tumult' as it came to be called, aimed at British policies that allowed the Zamindars (landowners) and money-lenders to exploit the Adivasis mercilessly.

Birsa Munda claimed miraculous healing powers. He believed that he could all treat diseases and even bring the dead to life. He asked the tribals to be fearless as he had come to solve their problems.

Many tribals joined the movement believing that he was an incarnation of God.

Birsa Munda wanted to bring back the 'golden age' of the Mundas. He wanted to free his people from the oppression of the traders, moneylenders, zamindars and the British. He asked the tribals to forcefully take back the land that the British had taken away from them.

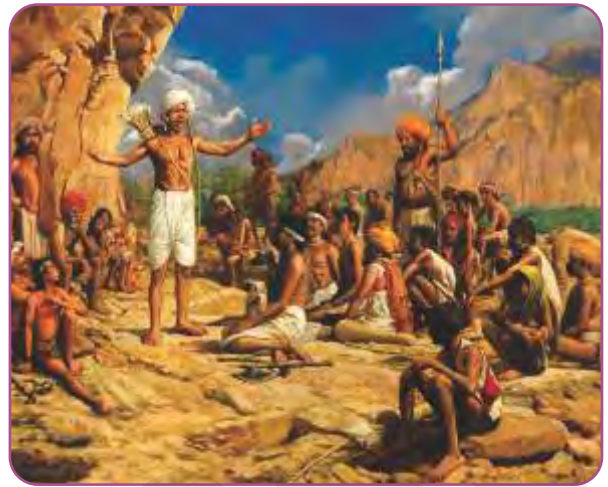
The movement launched by Birsa Munda was also a social movement. It aimed at reforming the tribal society. Birsa asked people to give up evil practices such as drinking liquor, performing animal sacrifices, worship of evil spirits and leading a dishonest life. He was also against the Christian missionaries who interfered in the traditional culture of the tribals.

The British came down heavily against the rebellion. They arrested Birsa in 1895 and imprisoned him. He died soon after. The movement fizzled out after this through sporadic protests continued.

Birsa Munda instrumental in starting the tribal movement in Chhotanagpur region. There is no record of his speeches as they were in their own dialect and nobody was literate enough to pen them down. But certain government and other records throw light on the history of these revolts and the social conditions.

Khasi Revolt

The interference of the British agents and Christian missionaries increased in the Northeast region in the 19th century. This made the native inhabitants of the region suspicious of British intentions. Khasis were a prominent tribe in the hilly region between Jantia and Garo hills in the Northeast. They resented the coming of outsiders into their territories including the Europeans and Bengali contractors. They even objected to the posting of British troops at the village of Nongkhlaw. They rose in rebellion, led by Tirut Singh, when there was a proposal of construction of a road connecting Brahmaputra valley and the Surma valley that was to pass through their region. The Khasis feared that it might pave the way for foreigners to establish their rule over them. The revolt lasted from 1829 to 1833. The Khasis attacked and killed the Europeans and burnt their settlements. This led to a long war



Birsa Munda



between the Khasis and the British resulting in surrendering of the Khasis and the imprisonment of their chief in Dhaka.

Assam

Assam witnessed a series of revolts between 1893 to 1894 as the British Government had increased land revenue tax from 50% to 70%. The British forcibly snatched their lands and ruthlessly tried to suppress them.

Manipur

The war of succession after the death of the king of Manipur resulted in the formation of two factions. One faction was led by his eldest son, Surchandra and the other by his step brother, Tikendrajit. Although the Manipuris fought bravely under Tikendrajit, yet were defeated as they had to compete with the British forces and Surchandra had sought British help.



A khasi couple in a traditional dress. The Khasis mainly stay in the state of Meghalaya.

STUDY OF GOVERNMENT RECORDS

The British government was largely aloof from the real conditions of the country while recording the data, but official records provide sufficient materials to reconstruct the past, and highlight the fate of the simple tribals, who were tortured and suppressed by their rulers.

Govind Giri, a non-tribal reformer emerged during the first decade of the 20th century. He advised his disciples - the Bhils of Banswara Dungarpur and adjoining area of Gujarat— to follow a moral code. There was considerable decrease in the income of these states from excise duties on wine, since the Bhils had stopped consuming alcoholic beverages on Giri's instructions. He raised his voice against the special privileges of the feudal chiefs of the region. The British harassed him and his followers because of his protests and the reduction in official income.

The civil records of 1888 of Andaman and Nicobar islands reveal that from 1866, a great deal of sickness and mortality was observed among the Andamanese. But the fact was that due to gradual clearance of forests, the tribals living near the settlement areas fell prey to malaria. With the passage of time, their mortality rate increased considerably. In fact, the contact with civilisation proved disastrous for them. It gave way to between the tribals and the British.



Govind Giri



Word Treasure

- renaissance* : the period of revival of art and culture
- humanism* : a European intellectual movement which held that though the universe is the creation of God the development and industrialization are the achievements of man.
- mechanisation* : the process of changing from working largely by hand or an animals to doing that work with machinery
- archieves* : a collection of historic documents or records providing information about a place, institution or group of people
- rediscover* : to discover again
- glorious* : famous; renowned

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The term tribal refers to
 - i) aboriginals
 - ii) Adivasis
 - iii) both of them
 - iv) none of them
- b. Who among the following was not a Santhal leader?
 - i) Kanhu
 - ii) Bhairo
 - iii) Birsa
 - iv) Sidhu
- c. The Paharia revolt broke out in
 - i) 1672
 - ii) 1772
 - iii) 1872
 - iv) 1972
- d. The British arrested in 1895.
 - i) Birsa Munda
 - ii) Local peasants
 - iii) Tilka Manjhi
 - iv) Govind Giri
- e. wanted to bring back the golden ages of the Mundas.
 - i) Govind Giri
 - ii) Tilak Manjhi
 - iii) Birsa Munda
 - iv) Zamindars



2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. Define the term 'Indigenous people'.
- b. What were the main economic activities of the tribals?
- c. Who was Birsa Munda?
- d. Who are the Khasis, Jaintias and Garos?
- e. Who tribe rose against the British rulers, local money lacks and Zamindars in 1820?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. Define the term 'tribal' and its main characteristics.
- b. What were the grievances of the tribals against the British?
- c. What does the civil records of 1888 tel us about the life of tribals?
- d. Write about the tribal revolts in India.
- e. What were the immediate causes of the Rampa Rebellion?



The British came down hearing against the Munda obellien. Why?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. means beginning or earliest time.
- b. The tribal women are fond of
- c. Khasis were a prominent tribe in the hilly region between and hills.
- d. Assam witnessed a series of revolts between to
- e. was the leader of the Munda revolt.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. The British rule affected only parts of Indian society.
- b. The tribals live in small clusters of huts and have a strong sense of community.
- c. The Khasi revolt lasted from 1829 to 1833.
- d. The war of succession after the death of the King of Manipur resulted in the formation of three factions.
- e. Govind Giri was a non-tribal reformer emerged during the first decade of the 20th century.

6. Cross word puzzle.

Across

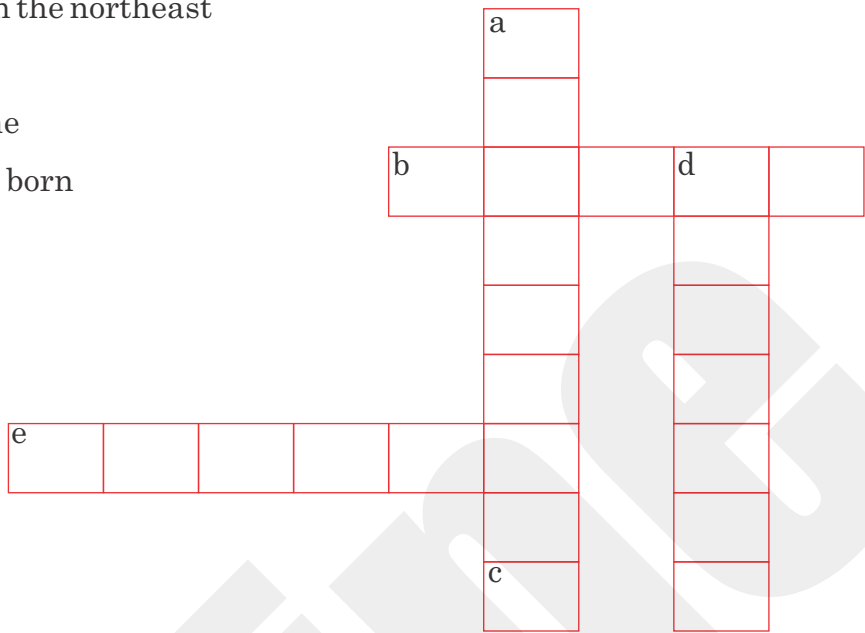
- b. It means 'outsiders'



- c. They inhabited large portions of Chota Nagpur region
- e. They were a prominent tribe in the northeast

Down

- a. Tribals are known by this name
- d. Place where Birsa Munda was born



Value Based Questions

In many places even today, tribal communities are fighting for their rights. How do you think we can feel that they are also an integral part of our society?

Activity Zone

You have studied about many of the tribes in this chapter. Find out about the changes in the way the tribals live now. The change is in their livelihood, dresses, houses, social norms, limited use of technology, etc.

Write an essay on at least three such tribes that have undergone a major change in contrast to their past history.

Steps

- ◆ Identify the three tribes that you will discuss in your essay.
- ◆ Use Internet resources and your local or school library to carry out your research. Research the origins of each tribe and its history.
- ◆ Establish whether these tribes have witnessed a decline or are still surviving well. Identify the causes of their decline. If one of the tribes is consistently doing well or has seen increased prosperity, identify the causes of this.
- ◆ Research their current popularity and status of each tribe. You may need to contact tribal organisations to obtain up-to-date information and statistics.
- ◆ Write your essay on the historical development of these tribes.
- ◆ Conclude with recommendations on how respect for tribal culture could be encouraged and further developed.





Indian Crafts and Industries In the 19th Century



Key Highlights

- ❖ The Glorious Past
- ❖ Our Industrialisation
- ❖ Handlooms
- ❖ Decline of Indian Handicrafts Industry
- ❖ Case Study : Textiles
- ❖ Lives of Weavers of India

Let's Start With



After strengthening its hold in India the British began to treat India as a colony and started exploiting it. The British conquest of India broke down the social fabric of India. It was clear from the very beginning that the British had not come to India to make it their new home unlike other invaders. The British had come to rule it, in order to expropriate the rich resources of India to its maximum.

HISTORY

THE GLORIOUS PAST

- The Mughal rule, from the 16th to the 18th centuries, had promoted the country's trade and industry. The Mughal era was relatively peaceful and secured.
- The finished goods of Indian industry as well as natural product such as pearls, perfumes, dye-stuff, spices, sugar, opium, etc., were exported to different countries.
- This kept the balance of trade firmly in its favour, and resulted in the net increase of gold/Foreign currency in India.
- Weaving was the leading industry in India during that time, but artistic crafts were not far behind. Fine shawls, jewellery, stone carvings, filigree work in gold and silver, brass



Weaving at Horrockses Mill, c.1900



and copper metal were, artistic marble work, sandalwood and ivory inlay work were other important products that were in great demand in foreign countries.

- Even in the beginning of the 19th century, ship-buiding was more developed in India than in England. This resented the British manufacturers. With the help of legislation and other unfair tactics, the Company officials conspired to grab control of the timber trade and began exporting huge quantities of timber to England.

DECLINE OF INDIAN HANDICRAFTS INDUSTRY

The 18th century witnessed the political crisis in India. The Mughal Empire started disintegrating after the death of Auranzeb the state machinery crumbled and could not protect the mercantile community as before and arts, crafts, trade and industry declined.

However, the British colonisers were not interested in preserving and promoting Indian arts and crafts. There were three major factors that led to the decline of Indian arts and crafts (including weaving):

1. The ruthlessly exploitative colonial policies.
2. The downfall of princely states and their rulers, who had long patronised indian handicraft and created conditions conducive to their prosperity and growth.
3. The beginning of the Industrial Revolution. Its mass produced. market products defeated the high quality-low production of class market goods which traditional India industries produced.

Indian textiles formed one of the cheif items of export. The complexity and finesse of the spinning and weaving Machines of Dacca was unmatched. The fine Dacca muslin was in great demand all over the word. It was exported in bulk by the European trading outposts in India. In the mid 17th century, for example, the Dutch annually exported three-quarters of a million pounds of Cossimbazar raw silk to Japan and Holland, and sold a large quantity to Central Asia Surviving Customs Office books at Murrshidabad show, that even during Bengal governor Ali Wardi Khan's rule, seventy lacs of ruppes worth of raw silk was exported.



Indian Muslim

Despite the hostility of the British manufacturers the demand for Indian goods from other European countries persisted. Hence, all the goods imported by the Company to England used to be re-exported to these countries. But due to the mounting hostilities between England and other European countries, first during the American War of Independence and later during the Napoleonic wars, this export suffered a severe setback. As a result, there was a sharp decline in the import of cotton goods from Bengal.

Moreover, the Industrial Revolution enabled the British manufacturers to improve the



quality as well as the output of British textile goods. In addition, the Company started importing raw materials, cotton from Bengal at very cheap prices, to feed the mechanised textile mills in England. The Company then exported bulk of finished cotton textiles from Manchester to Bengal. Due to the sophistication of machinery, vast quantities of cheap cotton goods from Manchester flooded the Indian market and almost destroyed the Indian Industries.

The average value of cotton goods annually exported from England was about £1, 200,000 between 1786 and 1790. By 1809 it increased to £18,400,000. In the early 1800s, Indian cotton and silk goods imported into Britain faced duties of 70 to 80 per cent, whereas British imports into India faced duties of only 2 to 4 per cent. That is why British imports of cotton manufactures into India increased by fifty times, and Indian exports dropped to one-fourth. Silk goods, woollens, iron, pottery, glassware and paper also met with a similar fate. As a result, millions of ruined artisans and craftsmen, spinners, weaver, potters, smelters and smiths were rendered jobless and became landless agricultural workers.

Thus, within half a century of the Battle of Plassey, Bengal was no longer a prosperous region. The flourishing industry of Bengal was destroyed, and the trade and industry sank. The decline of Indian towns, once famous for their fabrics, was the worst consequence of the ruin of the Indian handicraft industry.



Fact File

Dadabhai Naoroji, one of the greatest leaders of India, wrote in his book, *Poverty and Un-British Rule in India*, that throughout the British rule, there was a continuous drain of wealth from India to great Britain.



Dadabhai Naoroji

OUR INDUSTRIALISATION

The 18th century India was known for its manufacturing and agricultural outputs. But the commercial policy of the Company and the British Parliament destroyed Indian manufactures. In fact, all the colonial policies were made to subordinate the Indian economy to the British one.

The Company forced Indian agriculturists to grow cash crops like cotton and indigo to provide cheap raw materials for the looms and factories of Britain. Along with the destruction of the rural Indian economy, the British also destroyed Indian industry by similar Partition tactics. This led to the **de-industrialisation of India**.

The scarcity of indigenous capital caused by the drain of wealth and the disrupted conditions of the country because of the misrule of the British Company, made the revival of trade and industry impossible. The extent of the drain of wealth can be visualised from the fact that Nawabs of Bengal Mir Jafar and Mir Qasim had to pay more than five million pounds



sterling to the Company and its servants for gaining the throne of Bengal.

Lord Curzon, the Viceroy of British India in 1894, was of the view that: “India is the pivot of our Empire.... If the Empire loses any other part of its Dominion we can survive, but if we lose India the sun of our Empire will have set.”

At the same time, the policy of Permanent Settlement gave an impetus to agriculture and investment in land. Thus while the decline of industry drove more and more people to agriculture, the available capital was diverted to land acquisition by rich landlords who exploited the peasantry mercilessly. With the passage of time the trade of the country became the monopoly of the Europeans.

The emergence of a new Indian middle class with European tastes (a craze for foreign goods) and the preference of the British civil servants for British-made goods left these artisans with little or no work. The massive influx of British goods into India during the 19th century completed by uprooted the Indian textile and other industries. This whole process of decay in rural and urban handicraft production is termed as de-industrialisation.

The disintegration of rural industries started much after the development of means of communication. The introduction of railways made it possible for the British to reach the distant villages and uproot the traditional distant industries. Home spinning, which was a spare-time activity of village women, was greatly reduced.



Fact File

It has been estimated that the total drain from Bengal to England during the period 1757 to 1780 alone, in terms of export and repatriated private fortunes of the Company officials, came to a staggering \$38 million.

De-industrialisation also disturbed the balance of economic life in the villages. The gradual destruction of rural crafts snapped the economic ties between agriculture and domestic industry in the countryside. The peasants who supplemented their income by part-time weaving and spinning, now had to rely solely on agriculture. Pressure to grow uneconomical crops, heavy taxation, high of interest charged by moneylenders, and under-employment completely destroyed the Indian handicrafts. This forced shift-from handicraft industry to agriculture- is known as Peasantisation.

The company sent its Sepoys to destroy the factories owned by the Indian. Independent weavers who refused to work for the wages offered by the Company had their thumbs cut off.

The most severe blow to Indian industry came huge paltry influx of cheap textiles from England. Between 1986 and 1993, imported goods supplied about 60 per cent of Indian cloth consumption. This severely handicapped industrial development in India.

INDUSTRIALISATION

Despite the reluctance of the British India making attempts to recover from these severe



blows to the economy. Indians slowly started organising themselves along modern lines. The initiative was actually taken by the British in their own interest, out later on, Indian businessmen and entrepreneurs also started investing in factories. Thus, most of the profitable industries were established by British investors, and the bulk of the profit was sent back by them to Britain. But the setting up of factories in India was very Profitable for them.

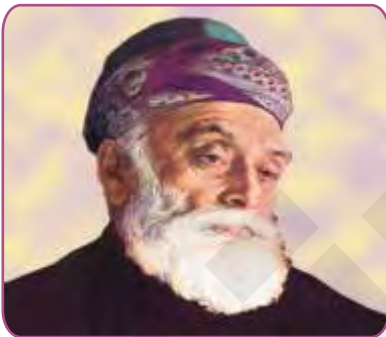
The machine age began in India when cotton textile, jute and coal-mining industries were started in the 1850s. The first textile mill was set up in Bombay by Cowasjee Nanabhoy in 1853 and the first jute mill in 1855 in Rishra, Bengal. By the end of the 19th century, such efforts made small but steady progress, but it was considered to be a good beginning.



Cowasjee Nanabhoy

The setting up of the first cotton mill prompted others to establish new mills in cotton producing areas like Nagpur, Ahmedabad, Sholapur, etc. Further, the Swadeshi movement that began in Bengal in 1905 gave a flip to this industry, and thereafter, a large number of mills were started, especially in Bengal. In 1882, there were as many as 20 jute mills. By 1901, the number of jute mills exceeded 36.

Coal mining was another area of investment for British investors. India was rich in coal, and there were abundant reserves of this mineral in Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. By 1906, nearly 1,00,000 people were employed in the coal mining industry. As India had sizeable deposits of iron in the vicinity of coal seams, the Indian iron and steel industry began showing signs of prosperity. The Tata Iron and Steel Company established at Jamshedpur in 1907 by Jamshedji Tata. Local availability of steel led to the development of indigenous heavy industries which, till then, had received no attention from the British.



Jamshedji Tata

In the last half of the 19th century, India's income fell by 50 per cent. In 190 years prior to Independence, the Indian economy was literally stagnant – experienced zero growth.' – Mike Davis, Late Victorian Holocausts.

A change in the attitude of the British government towards encouraging industries was noticed during the time of Lord Curzon. A separate department of Commerce and Industries was created in 1905 as his instance. Several mechanical industries-including rice, flour, timber, iron and steel works, and mineral industries as salt, mica and saltpetre were developed in the beginning of the 20th century. But as most of them were owned or controlled by the British their growth was slow, since the promoters were only interested in extracting



profit with minimum investment. Availability of cheap labour, raw material, and market for the produced goods at one place were the main reasons for investment.

“One mite wrung from the labrer's hands shall buy and sell the miser's lands; Or, if protected from on high, Does that whole nation sell and buy.” — William Blake. Auguries of Innocence

Other than machine based industries, the 19th century also witnessed the growth of plantation industries such as tea, coffee and indigo. They were mainly owned by Europeans. To develop these industries, the British invested heavily in the development of roads and railways which later proved to be beneficial for Indians. They developed the railways keeping in view the transportation of cotton and other raw materials to the ports. After independence, the same railways system played role in the industrialisation of India.

CASE STUDY : TEXTILES

1. The history of textiles in India dates back to the harappan period.
2. The discovery of spindles and piece of cotton stuck to a silver from its sites proves this. Spinning and weaving existed during the Mauryan period over 2000 years ago. It was the beginning of our textile heritage.

TEXTILE TECHNIQUES

Very simple technologies were used to make textiles. The findings of excavated sites, yield artifacts made of stone, bone etc., Which revealed that primarily man used his hand as the main tools, supplemented by other tools.

Since then various technologies have been developed to weave cloth. The word 'loom' stands for the frame or machine used for weaving. Weaving by hand on a wooden frame was referred to as handloom. In modern times especially after the Industrial Revolution, big machines driven by electricity replaced the handlooms and were referred to as power looms.

HANDLOOM

Handloom is ancient industry in India. The skill of weaving with deft fingers, drawings patterns and creating designs is an art. Looms are generally amazingly simple construction of wooden beams ropes and poles. The different types of looms used in India are:

Vertical Loom

The Vertical loom stands upright, leaning upon a wall or roof beam. To the ends of the warp yams, weights are tied in order to tighten the warp. The fabric is woven downwards and the weft is stricken tight with a weaving sword or Iron comb.

Horizontal Loom

In this technology, a structure comprises a frame set horizontally across vertical supports.



Vertical Loom



Horizontal Loom

of loom leaves the weavers' hands free to pass the weft shuttle through from side to side.

Pit-Loom

It is another loom technology frequently used in villages. The weaver sits with his legs in the pit where there are two pedals which open the warp threads allowing the weft shuttle to pass through freely. This type



Pit Loom



Power Loom

Power Loom

Power loom is the result of Industrialisation. It is a mechanised form of the flying shuttle similar to the used on hand looms.

LIVES OF WEAVERS OF INDIA

During the pre-Colonial rule, weavers enjoyed a good reputation. The arrival of the British saw the emergence of middlemen who were mainly responsible for disrupting their lives. With the import of cheap cotton from England, the Indian handloom weavers almost vanished.

These skilled craftsmen became unskilled labourers, thanks to the British policies of ruining the Indian textile industry. The middlemen exploited the weavers fully. As the patrons were already subdued by the British, there was no one to support them. As a result the weavers of Bengal became idle, the weavers of Punjab left their looms and joined the army, whereas the weavers of Gujarat left their homes in search of work and worked as labourers in cities.

After the partition of Bengal in 1905 and the sere of swadeshi and Boycott movement the nationalist leaders tried to popularise the clothes made in India. Later Mahatma Gandhi asked the people to boycott British cloth and use hand-woven cloth instead. This was an attempt to revive the dying textile industry in India.

After the independence of India, industrial development was one of the top priorities for the Indian governments. Today, India's textile sector comprises four important segments—modern textile mills, independent power looms, handlooms and garment factories.

Let's Think

Why did the British not encourage the growth of heavy industries like iron and steel?





Word Treasure

- balance of trade* : the difference in value between a country's imports and exports
- handicrafts* : Any artwork which is produced by manual labour rather than by machine
- de-Industrialisation* : the reduction of industrial activity or capacity in a region or economy
- under-employment* : a situation where more people are working on a small piece of land than required
- swedeshi movement* : movement started in 1905 for the promotion of indigenous goods

 Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The process of decay in rural and urban handicraft production is termed as
 - i) Centralisation
 - ii) De-industrialisation
 - iii) Peasantisation
 - iv) Industrialisation
- b. The first jute mill was started in in Rishra, Bengal.
 - i) 1853
 - ii) 1855
 - iii) 1882
 - iv) 1884
- c. Apart from machine based industries, the 19th century also witnessed the growth of plantation industries such as tea, coffee and indigo.
 - i) mining
 - ii) automobile
 - iii) textile
 - iv) plantation
- d. The introduction of made it possible for the British to reach the isolated villages and uproot the traditional industries.
 - i) Airways
 - ii) Railways
 - iii) Roadways
 - iv) Waterways
- e. Dadabhai Naoroji wrote" and Un-British rule in India.
 - i) Property
 - ii) Poverty
 - iii) Anarchy
 - iv) Diploma
- f. was another area of investment for British investors.
 - i) Mining
 - ii) Handicrafts
 - iii) coal mining
 - iv) Textile



2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. What led to the decline of Indian handicraft industries in the 19th century.
- b. Why were the clothes made in England less expensive than in India?
- c. How and when did the process of industrialisation start in India?
- d. What were the various technologies of weaving prevalent in India?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. What did the British government do to discourage the import of Indian industries?
- b. Describe the process of de-industrialisation, and its after-effects.
- c. How did the Industrial revolution in England affect Indian industries?
- d. Throw light on the early attempts by Indians to set up industries.



India goods imported to British faced duties of 70 to 80 percent whereas British goods imports in India faced duties of only 2 to 4 percent Explain why?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. The Mughal rule promoted the country's
- b. By flooding the Indian market with mass produced cotton textiles from the British ruined the indigenous Textile industry, and rendered lacs of people jobless.
- c. The century India was known for its manufacturing and agricultural out pads.
- d. Within 50 years of the Battle of, Bengal had no long a prosperous region.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. The Industrial revolution encouraged the Indian handicrafts.
- b. In the beginning of the 19th century, ship-building was more developed in England than in India.
- c. The policy of permanent settlement gave on impetus to agriculture and investment in land.
- d. In the 19th century, Plantation industries were mainly owned by Indians.

6. Match the following.

Column 'A'

- a. Lord Cunzon
- b. First textile mill
- c. First jute mill
- d. Partition of Bengal
- e. Tata Iron and steel company

Column 'B'

- (i) 1905
- (ii) the viceroy of British India
- (iii) 1907
- (iv) 1853
- (v) 1853





Value Based Questions

How did de-industrialisation disturb the balance of economic life in the villages?

Activity Zone

Visit a local handloom centre to learn about how weaving is done on a handloom.

LET'S SUMMARISE

- Before the arrival of the British, craftsmen were organized into guilds, each with its own rules and regulations; made enormous profits by selling the goods
- Famous trading centres were Surat, Masulipatnam and Visakhapatnam; Dhaka, Broach, Madurai emerged as specialized centres for fine textiles
- Traditional fabric of the Indian economy destroyed with the advent of the East India company

Commercial Policy of the British

- Indian trade was open to all British subjects as per the Charter of 1815; Indian market flooded with imported goods; tough competition of Indian handicrafts against British goods which were exempted from import duties
- **De-industrialization** of indigenous industries
- Craftsmen forced to give up their livelihood and take up alternative employment as landless labourers
- British gathered enormous wealth to finance their administrative expenses and industries

Growth of Modern Industries

- The **Famine Commissions** of 1880 and 1901 recommended revival of India industries; established of Imperial Department of Commerce and Industries (1901) due to demands of Indian National Congress
- British helped in establishing some mechanized industries for their imperial interests
- **Bengal Coal Company** established in 1843; coal mining confined to Bengal and Bihar; jute industry developed in the middle of the 19th century; first jute mill established in Rishra near Kolkata; **sugar industry** developed in early 20th century; India became the largest sugar producing country in the world; establishment of **Tata Iron and Steel Industry** in Jharkhand in 1911

Impact of British Policies on Indian Industries

- Industrial Revolution led to an unequal competition between the cheap machine-made goods of England and the expensive Indian Handicrafts
- Patronage to Indian handicrafts reduced due to integration of many Indian Kingdoms
- Paucity of raw materials for Indian industries due to demand of raw materials for British industries
- Adverse impact on the export of Indian handicrafts and goods due to heavy custom duties imposed by the British

Indian Industrialization : Salient Features

Unbalanced industrial growth; negligence of the British to the growth of basic industries; discrimination against India industries; lack of heavy industries; difficulties in obtaining loans; new social stratification; mass-scale migration of farmers to cities and their transformation into industrial workers; development of infrastructure

Textile Industry : A Case study

- British East India Company exported silks and various cotton fabrics to other countries by the end of 17th century
- Kanchipuram, Ahmedbad, Aurangabad, Varanasi, Jaipur, Chanderi, Paithan, Gadhwal and Kashmir were important centres of textiles; country enjoyed a huge trade surplus
- Destruction of hand-spinning industry with coming of the machine-spun yarn from Britain; heavy taxes of Indian handloom to protect British textile industry
- Ambitious Indian entrepreneurs set up indigenous industries; first cotton mill set up in Mumbai in 1853 by Cowasjee Nanabhoy; Jamshetji Tata set up the Empress Mill in Nagpur in 1867; many cotton mills were set up in Ahmedabad, Sholapur and Nagpur
- Mahatma Gandhi gave a new lease of life to handspun textile industry with the introduction of Khadi in the first half of the 20th century





The Revolt of 1857



Key Highlights

- ❖ The Revolt of 187
- ❖ Spread of the Revolt
- ❖ Causes of Failure
- ❖ Nature of the Elite and Peasant Participation
- ❖ Nature of the Revolt of 1857
- ❖ Causes of the Revolt
- ❖ Main Centres of the Revolt
- ❖ Advantages of the Revolt
- ❖ Outcome of the Revolt

Let's Start With

Sir, would you kindly tell us about the Sepoy Mutiny.



Sepoy Mutiny which is also known as the Revolt of 1857 was a widespread but unsuccessful rebellion against British Rule in India in 1857-58. Begun in Meerut by Indian troops (sepoys) in the service of British East India Company, it spread to Delhi, Agra, Kanpur and Lucknow. In India, It is often called the first war of Independence and other similar names.

HISTORY

We have read in the previous chapters that the British had established themselves as the supreme political power in India. A large part of India was directly under British administration. Other areas were indirectly controlled by the British as the rulers of these areas acknowledged British supremacy. The Mughal Empire under Bahadur Shah Zafar existed only in name as they had neither territory nor power. But it would be wrong to think that the mass of Indians accepted this domination meekly. On the contrary, the different sections of society expressed their anger through protests and revolts.

Hardly a year elapsed without an uprising taking place at one place or the other. Revolts occurred almost regularly even in territories that were under the direct control of the company's administration. Many of these rebels were ordinary people, peasants and tribal people, led by dispossessed rulers, beggared zamindars and patwaris, and dispossessed, disgruntled local chieftains. There were also several mutinies by sepoys of the Company's army. Many of these rebels were joined by soldiers from previously disbanded regiments, or



those from defunct armies of former rulers. These protests, however, were largely localized. Hence, the British suppressed them easily.

THE REVOLT OF 1857

The Revolt of 1857 was the outcome of the changing conditions of the time. It was a culmination of the accumulated grievances of the people against the tyrannical British rule. The oppressive character of colonial rule, and the accumulated grievances of the people led to a situation where they could no longer tolerate foreign rule. The issue of cartridges greased with cow and pig fat (the paper covers had to be bitten off before the cartridges could be inserted into the new Enfield rifle) inflamed orthodox Hindu as well as Muslim soldiers alike.

The Revolt of 1857 is an event of great importance in the history of Modern India. In a way, it was the last attempt by the deposed and marginalised Indian ruling class, soldiers, peasants and workers to throw off the British yoke. So widespread and so violent was the Revolt that it took the British more than a year to put it down.

CAUSES OF THE REVOLT

The Revolt of 1857 was not a mere spontaneous uprising caused by localized displeasure against some arbitrary administrative decisions; it had deep underlying political, social, economic, religious and military causes.

Political Causes

The political causes of the Revolt of 1857 were.

1. The British policy of annexing territories led to the displacement of the ruling classes. The dynasty of the Mughals was all gone.
2. The rulers who accepted the terms of the subsidiary Alliance lost their independence. Their armies were disbanded and they become dependent on the Company for all their needs.
3. The strict enforcement of the policy of doctrine of lapse turned Rani Lakshmi Bai against the British. She led the revolt in Jhansi.
4. The annexation of Awadh in 1856 by Lord Dalhousie was greatly resented since the nawab of Awadh had always been loyal to the British. It was seen as an act of betrayal and back-stabbing by the British. It deeply hurt the sentiments of the people particularly the sepoys, because most of them were from Awadh.



Nana Sahib

Economic Causes

The economic causes of the Revolt of 1857 were.

1. As a result of the Industrial Revolution, machine-made English clothes flooded the Indian market at the expense of the indigenous

textile industry. The weavers employed in the textile industry lost their jobs and become strong opponents of the English.

2. The commercial policy of the British was anti-Indian. Customs duty was imposed on Indian goods being exported to England. This led to rise in the prices of Indian goods in England. Consequently, the demand for Indian goods decreased, and Indian trade suffered a severe setback.
3. During the rule of the English, both agriculture as well as peasants suffered. Zamindars were accepted as the owners of the land. They deposited fixed amounts in the government treasury and collected as much land revenue as they could squeeze from the peasants. As a result, the peasants wanted to get rid of this tyrannical system.
4. Heavy taxes had been levied on the Indian people but people did not have the capacity to pay them. The British were only interested in maximum tax collection with minimum effort.

Social Causes

The social causes of the Revolt of 1857 were:

1. William Bentinck introduced many social reforms. He stopped child marriage and abolished the custom of Sati. While this was a good thing, many orthodox Hindus thought they were trying to change the social order.
2. The social discrimination faced by the people due to the British attitude of racial discrimination also resented the Indians. For example, Indians were not allowed to travel in first class compartments in trains.
3. Educated Indians were denied promotions and the opportunity to be appointed to high posts.

Religious Causes

The religious causes for the revolt were:

1. Christian priests were openly trying to convert Indian people by offering them certain facilities and privileges. This alarmed the rank and file of society, and offended all Indians—whether Muslim or Hindu.
2. Dissatisfaction among the Indian grew with the spread of western education.

They believed that under the garb of education, the British were trying to get Indians to abandon their cultural heritage and convert to Christianity.

Military causes

The Revolt of 1857 has also been turned into the Sepoy Mutiny by the British. Indian soldiers or 'sepoys' formed the bulk of the Company's army in India. As they were a part of society, they too suffered the consequences of oppressive British rule. The annexation of Awadh angered them greatly. They were also influenced by the fear that their religion was under threat. Besides, they had other grievances.

1. The sepoys were paid much less than the British soldiers. They were also treated unfairly by their British officers.



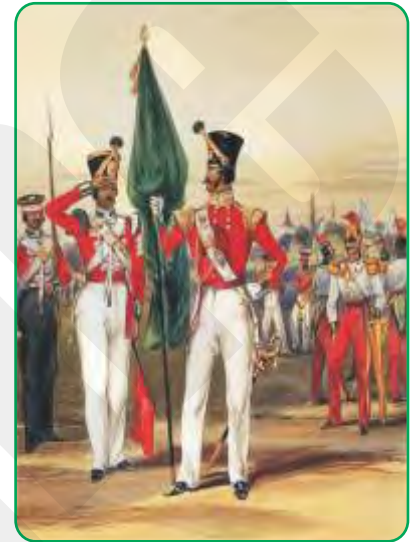
- All high posts in the army were reserved for the British. Hence, the scope of promotion for a sepoy was very limited. No Indian could rise higher than a subedar.
- The sepoys were not allowed to wear caste and religious marks.
- An act was passed that required the new recruits to travel overseas, if needed. The Hindu sepoys resented this as they believed that travel across the sea led to loss of caste.
- The foreign service allowance or 'bhatta', which the sepoys got when they were sent to fight outside the country, was discontinued.

Let's Think

What is a revolt? Is it different from a mutiny?

Immediate Cause

There was widespread discontentment against the British rule. By 1857, the stage was set for a massive outbreak. Only a spark was needed to set the Country ablaze. A rifle cartridge provided that spark. In 1856, a new model of Enfield rifle was introduced in place of the earlier rifles. The Cartridges were said to be greased with the fat of cows and pigs. Though the British Government denied the truth of this allegation, the Indian sepoys refused to use these cartridges, since the paper covering of the cartridges had to be bitten off before they could be loaded into the rifle. These greased cartridges offended the religious sentiments of both the Hindu and Muslim sepoys.



The sepoys

SPREAD OF THE REVOLT



Mangal Pandey

The Great Revolt began in Barrackpore, a town to the north of Kolkata, at the end of January 1857. The news about the new cartridges spread from one cantonment to another. The Indian soldiers at Barrackpore refused to use the greased cartridges. A sepoy called Mangal Pandey triggered off the revolt at Barrackpore by refusing to use the cartridges. He fired at an English officer. For which, he was arrested and subsequently hanged.

On May 9, ninety soldiers of the army stationed at Meerut, 57 km from Delhi also refused to use the cartridges. Eighty-five of them were disarmed, arrested and jailed for ten years. The next day, on May 10, the whole of the Meerut army was in revolt. The soldiers stormed the jail and released the prisoners. The British officers were shot dead. The banner of revolt was unfurled. The soldiers and the people here openly challenged the British.

These soldiers now marched to Delhi, where the local infantry joined them and killed all the British officers. The old Mughal Emperor, Bahadur Shah Zafar II was proclaimed the ruler of India. With the revolt of the Bengal army, the revolt spread to Awadh, Rohilkhand, the Doab, Bundelkhand, Central India and large parts of Bihar.



At some places, the revolt of the army was followed by the revolt of the civilian population. Emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar, Nana Sahib, Rani Laxmibai of Jhansi, Maulavi Ahmed Shah of Faizabad, Begum Hazrat Mahal of Awadh, Kunwar Singh of Bihar and General Bakht Khan of the Mughal Army were some of the important leaders of the revolt. The rulers of Hyderabad, Patiala, Gwalior, Nabha, Baroda and Jaipur along with the Gorkha and the Sikh leaders, sided with the English. Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, Bareilly and Jhansi were the main centres of the revolt.



Rani Laxmibai of Jhansi

MAIN CENTRES OF REVOLT

Delhi

The soldiers marched towards Delhi. The English officers in Delhi made a futile attempt to arrest the advance of the revolutionaries. The rebels declared Bahadur Shah Zafar II to be their king. Within four or five days, they captured Delhi.

Sir John Nicholson recaptured Delhi in September 1857. Thousands of people and soldiers were tortured in several ways and put to death under the supervision of General Neil. Bahadur Shah Zafar was arrested and sentenced to life imprisonment and deported to Rangoon, where he died in 1862. His two sons were shot dead before his eyes. Thus proclaimed the once-powerful Mughal Empire meet its inglorious end.



Tantia Tope

Kanpur



Bahadur Shah Zafar II

At Kanpur, Nana Sahib proclaimed himself the Peshwa. He was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II. He was a brave and determined General. He led the revolt and captured the fort. His commander Tantia Tope was known for his patriotism and skill in guerilla warfare. All Britishers including women and children were executed. Forces under General Havelock took vengeance on the rebels for the murder of the Europeans. The rebels were tied to the mouths of cannons and blown to pieces. The English succeeded in recapturing the city. Nana Sahib escaped to Nepal and thence into the hills, where he died later.

Lucknow

The Revolt of Lucknow was led by Hazrat Mahal, the Begum of Awadh (wife of wajid Ali Shah) who was acting as the regent of her son. Rebel organised an all-out



1857 Revolt—the Lucknow Residency



attack on the British and besieged General Henry Lawrence and other Englishmen in the Residency. Sir Henry Lawrence was shot dead.

General Havelock came to their rescue but failed to do so and lost a large number of soldiers in the process. At last, the British soldiers and civilians entered the Residency building and held it for a long time. Lucknow was reoccupied in 1858 by British forces led by General Campbell. The Begum slipped away to Nepal.

Jhansi

In central India, the revolt was led by Rani Laxmi Bai of Jhansi. She was supported by Tantia Tope, the Commander of Nana Sahib's forces. Both of them put up stiff resistance against the British. However, When all the chances of victory ended, the Rani escaped and joined Tantia Tope at Kalpi. Their combined forces were defeated in Gwalior. The Rani died on June 17, 1858, fighting bravely till the end.

After her death Sir Hugh Rose, the British commander paid her the highest compliment when he said that she was the only man among the rebels. Her followers burnt her body lest it should fall into enemy hands. Tantia Tope kept the British forces engaged for two years in Central India and Rajputana. After a Zamindar betrayed him, he was arrested and hanged on April 18, 1859.

Bihar

In Bihar, the rebellion was led by Kunwar Singh, Raja of Jagdishpur and his brother Amar Singh. They were supported by a commander, Pir Ali. They had many encounters with the British and took over Azamgarh. Later on, Kunwar Singh joined Nana Sahib but received a fatal wound while fighting and died in April 1858. In the last battle at Jagdishpur, the British soldiers were routed. After Kunwar Singh's death, his younger brother Amar Singh fought till December 1859.

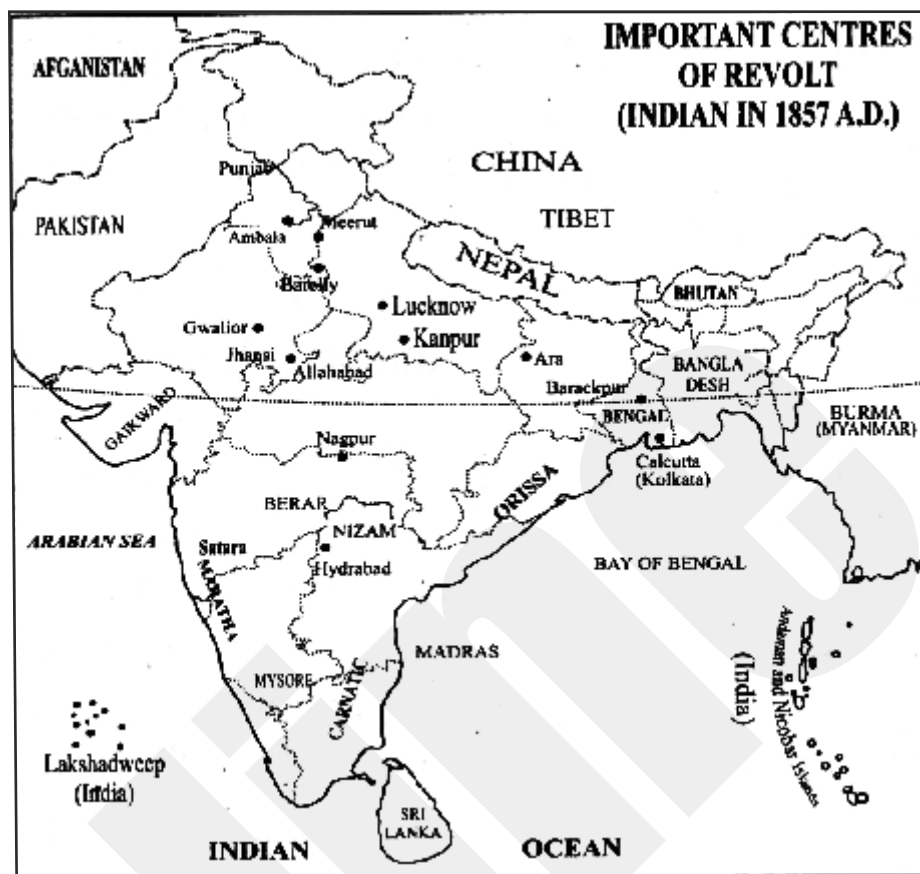
CAUSES OF FAILURE

The Revolt of 1857 was the first big challenge to British rule. It failed due to many reasons. Some of these reasons were:

1. The revolt did not spread to all parts of the country. Sindh, Rajputana, Kashmir and Punjab did not participate in it.
2. The Sikh, Rajput, and Gorkha battalions remained loyal and helped the British to suppress the Revolt.
3. The Revolt lacked unity. Scindhia, Holkar, the Nizam, the Raja of Jodhpur and other Rajput rulers, the Nawab of Bhopal, the rulers of Nabha, Patiala and Jind, Many other ruling chiefs, the zamindars and big merchants remained loyal and actively supported the British.
4. Different groups, states and chiefs who joined the revolt had their own motives. Selfishness of the leaders weakened the Revolt.
5. The revolutionaries were poorly organized. They had no common plan of action.
6. The revolutionaries lacked resources like men, money and munitions, while the British Government poured immense supplies of them into India.



7. The Revolt started much before the fixed date i.e., 31st May, 1857. The result was that the whole plan remained disorganized, while the British got timely warning and could get their forces organized.
8. The postal and telegraphic systems, and other means of communication were controlled by the English which helped them in suppressing the Revolt.
9. With the fall of Delhi, the focal point of the revolt disappeared. The British could now wipe out the pockets of resistance individually.



ADVANTAGES OF THE REVOLT

Strong Unity Achieved

The Revolt of 1857 remains a source of pride for Indians all over the globe. It was indeed a glorious chapter in modern Indian history. It symbolised a sense of unity that bound the different parts of the country together against a common enemy.

Potential Power of the People Reflected

The revolt threw up many military leaders and statesmen. The bravery, heroism and patriotism displayed by leaders like Nana Sahib, Tantia Tope, Rani Laxmi Bai and General Bakht Khan proved to be a source of inspiration and patriotism to succeeding Indian generations in their struggle for freedom.

NATURE OF ELITE AND PEASANT PARTICIPATION

The leaders of the revolt were princes and landlords. Though they led the people against the British forces, their aim was not to establish a new order. Rather, they only wanted to restore the earlier socio-political order, where their rights and privileges would be restored. In other words, they were simply interested in turning the clock back, not interested in marching into a new era.

Nor were the people themselves as enlightened as those of Europe, who had brought about political revolutions and economic changes based on principles, democracy of nationalism and social equality. There were people in various parts of the country who accepted British rule, since they thought it was best for them.



OUTCOME OF THE REVOLT

The Revolt was crushed, but the sacrifices of the revolutionaries did not go in vain. It produced far-reaching consequences:

1. It ended the rule of the East India Company. The Indian Empire was placed directly under the British Crown. Queen Victoria was proclaimed the Empress of India.
2. The rule of the Mughals and that of the Peshwa came to an end.
3. Governor General was made the viceroy and he was subordinate to the Secretary of the state.
4. The Indian rulers were assured that their states would no longer be taken over. They were also given the authority to declare their adopted sons as their legal heirs.
5. The Indian masses were given assurance that they would not be forced to embrace Christianity. Indians were also promised high positions according to their merit.
6. The British began to follow the policy of 'divide and rule' policy.
7. The army was re-originated to prevent further revolt. The number of the Indian soldiers in the Indian army was reduced, whilst the number of the European soldiers was raised.

Despite of its failure, the Revolt of 1857 awakened the slumbering spirit of the Indians. It roused national feelings among the people and paved the way for the rise of the national movement. It inspired the people to strive for freedom and as a result, India won its freedom in 1947.

Queen Victoria's Proclamation

A proclamation was issued by Queen Victoria when she assumed responsibility for governing India. The proclamation was read out by Viceroy Lord Canning at Allahabad on Nov. 1, 1858. The proclamation was significant, many promises were never kept.

NATURE OF THE REVOLT OF 1857

To underplay the importance of the uprising, British historians refer to as a 'sepoy Mutiny', that is, one in which a few sepoys of the English East Company revolted. The facts however, suggest otherwise. The revolt was started by the sepoys but was joined in large numbers by the civilian population. The participation of peasants and artisaves made the revolt a widespread and popular event. In some areas, the common people revolted even before the sepoys. All this shows that it was clearly a



Queen Victoria



V.D. Savarkar

popular revolt. It was characterized by Hindu-Muslim unity. Unity between different regions also existed. Rebels in one part of the country helped people fighting in other areas. Seeing the spread of the revolt and the participation of people, Indian trains like V.D. Savarkar, got termed as the 'First War' of Independence.



Fact File

Benjamin Disraeli, a British Conservative politician, who later became Prime Minister, admitted that the Revolt of 1857 was a notional revolt.



Word Treasure

- revolt* : to break away from or rise against duly constituted authority
- uprising* : an act of rising up in revolt
- mutiny* : rebellion against any authority
- bhatta* : allowance; extra key, or park received by the soldier.
- cartridge* : a metal case that holds a bullet and an explosive
- proclamation* : a written charter or declaration

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. introduced many social reformers.
- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Lord Curzon | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Lord Dalhousie | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) William Bentinck | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Lord Canning | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. Mangal Pandey, a Sepoy of the regiment, rebelled and hanged.
- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| i) Barrackpore | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Meerut | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Delhi | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Lucknow | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. In Lucknow, led the revolt.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Nana Sahib | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Hazrat Mahal | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Hamid Bano | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Tantia Tope | <input type="checkbox"/> |



d. was arrested and sentenced to life imprisonment and deported to Rangoon.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Hamida Bano | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Tantia Tope | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Bahadur Shah Zafar | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Rani Laxmibai | <input type="checkbox"/> |

e. kept the British forces engaged for two years in central India and Rajputana.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| i) Kunwar Singh | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Nana Sahib | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Laxmi Bai | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Tantia Tope | <input type="checkbox"/> |

f. recaptured Delhi in September 1857.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) William Bentick | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Bahadur Shah Zafar | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Sir John Nicholson | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) General Havelock | <input type="checkbox"/> |

g. proclaimed himself the Peshwa, at Kanpur.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Tantia Tope | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Nana Sahib | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Bajirao II | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) None of these | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- What were the grievances of the sepoys?
- What were the reasons for the failure of the revolt?
- What administrative changes took place after 1858?
- Who led the revolt in Jhansi?
- Who was Kunwar Singh and Amar Singh?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- What were the political and economic causes of the Revolt of 1857?
- What was the nature of the Revolt of 1857? Was it just a Sepoy Mutiny?
- List the reforms introduced by the British that aggravated the people and ruling classes.
- What were the outcomes of the 1857 revolt?
- How did the greased cartridges offend the sentiments of the sepoys?



- According to you, what was the most important effect of the Revolt of 1857? Give at least one reason to support your answer.
- 'The Revolt of 1857 was an unprecedented event in the history of India.' Do you agree? Justify the statement.



4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. William Bentinck stopped child marriage and abolished the custom of
- b. The English preached through educational institutions.
- c. The majority of the sepoys in the company army were from

5. Write 'T' for true and 'F' for false statements.

- 1. The Revolt of 1857 was fought on the issue of cartridges greased with cow and pig fat.
- 2. The strict enforcement of the policy of subsidiary alliance turned Rani Laxmibai against the British.
- 3. Orthodox Indians were dissatisfied because of the spread of western education.
- 4. The sepoys and the British soldiers were paid equal salary.

6. Match the following.

Column 'A'

- a. The annexation of Awadh
- b. Bhatta
- c. Hazrat Mahal
- d. Tantiya Tope
- e. Kunwar Singh

Column 'B'

- (i) The Begum of Awadh
- (ii) 1856
- (iii) Raja of Jagdishpur
- (iv) Foreign service allowance
- (v) Commander of Nana Sahib's forces

7. Give one word answer.

- a. He stopped child marriage and abolished the custom of Sati.
- b. He was the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II.
- c. In central India, the revolt was led by her.
- d. He was the younger brother of Kunwar Singh.
- e. She was proclaimed the empress of India.



Value Based Questions

The leaders were motivated by their personal gains rather than the feeling of patriotism. This statement is used to comment on the failures of the Revolt of 1857. Do you think that this statement has any legacy even today? Give your opinion and reason to justify your answer.

Activity Zone

Collect the pictures of various leaders of rebellion who actively took part in it and prepare a brief profile of each. Arrange a class trip to any place related to revolt of 1857 and seek information from local residence about their great heroes of their past.





Women and Reform



Key Highlights

- ❖ Reforming 19th Century Indian Society
- ❖ Position of Women in 19th Century India
- ❖ Unravelling the Past
- ❖ Social Evils
- ❖ Reform Movements and Colonial Legislation
- ❖ Reform Movement in South India
- ❖ Christian Missionaries
- ❖ Impact of the Reform Movement

Let's Start With



This topic is about the status of women in India in nineteenth (19th) century. Today women in India have equal rights. This has become possible because of various educational, social and religious reforms in India. But about 200 years ago in the nineteenth (19) century India status of women in India was not same what we look today. Women in nineteenth century married at an early age, Widows led miserable life (safe), rights to property were restricted and had no access to education. Women discrimination was on the peak. Women activists, women social reforms, women reform movement played a great role in changing the position of women in Indian society.

REFORMING 19TH CENTURY INDIAN SOCIETY

In the eighteenth century, Indian society was in the grip of social evils like superstition, discrimination against women and caste-based social structure. Social evils such as sati, female infanticide and child marriage had crept into Hindu society. Women were not allowed to study and were married off at a tender age. Widows could not remarry.

They did not have the right to inherit property. Their social position was very low and they were dependent on the menfolk in their family. The caste system was predominant in India.

From the early 19th century, some broad-minded Indians society felt the need to shed backwardness and initiate reforms. Since many of the social evils and superstitions were



related to religious beliefs, social reform movements also had overtones of religious reform. Educated middle class who were influenced by the western thought came forward to lead these reform movements, which marked the transition of Indian society from the medieval to the modern age. Religion, society and culture underwent a remarkable change in India and gave an impetus to national consciousness. Here we will read about some of the socio-religious movements of this time. Some prominent social and religious reform movements were the Brahma Samaj, the Arya Samaj, the Ramakrishna Mission and the Aligarh Movement.

POSITION OF WOMEN IN 19TH CENTURY INDIA

From a position of near equality with men during Vedic times, the position of Indian woman slowly declined from as early as 1000 BC. This was followed by 2000 years of deterioration. In fact, by the beginning of the medieval period, women's status reached at bottom before a slow recovery ensued. Change in the patriarchal system of society, improvements in education, age of marriage, widow, remarriage, different laws and customs, and recognition of women's economic potential.... all played a role in reviving the status of Indian women.

The colonial rulers and the emerging educated class recognized the role and importance of women in society and made a sustained effort to find a remedy.

UNRAVELLING THE PAST

Moving from Vedic society through the Buddhist period to a Puranic Hindu society and through Muslim rule to the British Raj, Indian society had already been a patriarchal one. During the Vedic and Buddhist periods women remained subordinate to men.

SOCIAL EVILS

During the medieval period the status of women suffered further restrictions on rights and freedoms. As the dual customs of child marriage, *purdah* and polygamy took hold, Hindus preferred to:

1. marry them off at a young age;
2. keep them in *Purdah*;
3. marry off more than one girl to a Hindu man, i.e., polygamy.

Sati

As a woman not economically independent, she was treated as burden on the society after her husband's death. The inhuman practice of *sati*, prevalent at that time, clearly showed the miserable condition of women. According to this practice, a widow, dressed like a bride, was forced to sit on the funeral pyre with the corpse of her dead husband. Drums were beaten when this ceremony was performed probably to silence the cries of the woman in agony while she would be burnt alive with her husband.

The other possible reason could have been that other women would not hear the cries of the dying woman and refuse to perform sati when they met with similar fate. But with the end of the medieval age and the coming of the industrial age under



Sati System



the British, the newly-emerged intelligentsia in Indian society made a concerted effort to stamp it out.

SATI

According to Hindu Mythology, Daksha's wife *Sati* was so overcome at the death of her husband that she immolated herself on his funeral pyre. Since then, her name is synonymous with the act of self-immolation by a widow. *Sati* has been often confused with jauhar. During the medieval period, when foreign marauders made frequent raids on India, jauhar was committed by women to save themselves from dishonour at the hands of the invaders.

Child Marriage

It was essentially a defensive reaction on the part of an insecure Hindu society. In order to safeguard the honour of their women, Hindus preferred to marry off their daughters at a very tender age. It was the custom not only among the poor sections but also the wealthy classes. In most cases, children were married when they were mere infants.

Widow Remarriage

Due to the prevalence of child marriage and polygamy, young widows in Hindu society were seen as burden. Old upper caste wealthy men often got married to young girls and after their husband's death, these young widows were forced to live in isolation and under restrictions. Their heads were shaved, they could only eat vegetarian food, wear simple mostly white clothes and live in a small room mostly cut off from the main house. They could not participate in any social function and it was considered a bad omen to see their face in public. Widow Remarriage was prohibited in India society, particularly among the Brahmins and other upper castes.

Age of Consent

Attempts have been made by the state and reformers to do away with the evils of early marriage by legislation. In 1901, the Gaikwads of Baroda passed the Infant Marriage Prevention Act, which fixed the minimum marriageable age in the state for girls at twelve and for boys at sixteen. The 'Age of Consent Committee' met at Shimla in June, 1928, to discuss the marriage reforms. After its recommendations, Rai Saheb Harbilas Sharda's Child Marriage Restraint Act, popularly known as 'Sharda Act', was passed in 1929. It laid down the minimum age of marriage for girls as fourteen and for boys as sixteen.

The British brought with them their distinct culture and technology, which impacted social reformation and ultimately benefited women. Before the British, many Indian rulers and leaders such as Akbar, Jahangir, Guru Ramdas and the Maratha Peshwas had tried to discourage discrimination against women. They took strong measures to eradicate social ills, particularly sati. Finally, the colonial state joined hands with the Indian Intelligentsial, led Raja Rammohan Roy, to modernise and reform Indian Society.



REFORM MOVEMENTS AND COLONIAL LEGISLATION

Bengal

British rule led to the emergence of new enlightened social class in India. This class was liberal in its outlook, and drew its inspiration from intellectual currents prevailing in other parts of the world. The nineteenth century Bengal Underwent great social change, out of which there emerged many socio-religious reform movements led by Raja Rammohan Roy, Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar, Keshab Chandra Sen, etc. Let us discuss some of these movements.

Raja Rammohan Roy and the Brahma Samaj

Raja Rammohan Roy was a pioneer in introducing women reforms through Brahma Samaj. After receiving a traditional education in Sanskrit at Banaras, and in Arabic and Persian at Patna, he came in contact with the English. He devoted most of his life to social welfare. He founded the Brahma Sabha in 1828.



Raja Rammohan Roy

Many social evils of that *period* were the direct outcome of the prevailing superstitious beliefs. Its most glaring example was the practice of sati. Hindu widows would immolate themselves on the funeral pyre of their husband to 'earn a lasting place in heaven'. To Rammohan Roy, sati was a grave crime which needed to be abolished. Thus, in 1829, moved by a public outcry against the practice, Governor General Lord William Bentinck abolished sati and made it punishable by law. Apart from sati, Raja Rammohan Roy also raised his voice against the purdah, sustains, polygamy, and the abuses of the caste system. He strongly advocated for the education of women, widow remarriage, and abolition of untouchability.



Fact File

Raja Rammohan Roy was described by Rabindranath Tagore as the 'father of Indian Renaissance' and 'Prophet of Indian Nationalism'.

Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar

Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar was moved by the plight of young widows. He opposed both polygamy and child marriage. He also suggested that Hindu society should allow remarriage for widows. To show his compassion for widows, he got his own son married to a widow.



Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar

He played an important role in the passing of the Hindu Widows Remarriage Act in 1856. He also advocated introduction of modern subjects along with the traditional Sanskrit learning in Sanskrit Colleges. He was of the view that all castes should have access to Sanskrit learning. He devoted his life to spreading education, particularly among girls and the downtrodden. He is said to be the originator of the modern Bengali language.



Swami Vivekananda and The Ramakrishna Mission

Among the educated young men who were attracted to the teachings of Sri Ramakrishna was a young man called Narendranath, who later came to be known as Swami Vivekananda. Swami Vivekananda founded the Ramakrishna Mission, which helped in the reconstruction of society in many ways. The Mission preaches harmony of all religions and upliftment of women. He urged people to respect women while himself working for women's education and upliftment.

Sister Nivedita, a Vivekananda's disciple, was an Anglo-Irish Social worker. She worked, for the upliftment of women in India. She opened a girl's school at Bagbazar in Calcutta. She laid emphasis on social service and respect for women in society. A champion of humanism, she fought for the empowerment of women of all castes, creeds and backgrounds.

Swami Vivekananda's address at the final session of the World's Parliament of Religions, Chicago, 27 September 1893

... Much has been said of the common ground of religious unity. I am not going just now to venture my own theory. But if anyone here hopes that this unity will come by the triumph of any one of the religions and the destruction of the others, to him I say, 'Brother, yours is an impossible hope.' Do I wish that the Christian would become Hindu? God forbid. Do I wish that the Hindu or Buddhist would become Christian? God forbid.



Sister Nivedita



Swami Vivekananda

The seed is put in the ground, and earth and air and water are placed around it. Does the seed become the earth, or the air, or the water? No. It becomes a plant. It develops after the law of its own growth, assimilates the air, the earth, and the water, converts them into plant substance, and grows into a plant.

Similar is the case with religion. The Christian is not to become a Hindu or a Buddhist, nor a Hindu or a Buddhist to become a Christian. But each must assimilate the spirit of the others and yet preserve his individuality and grow according to his law of growth.

If the Parliament of Religions has shown anything to the world, it is this: It has proved to the world that holiness, purity and charity are not the exclusive possessions of any church in the world, and that every system has produced men and women of the most exalted character. In the face of this evidence, if anybody dreams of the exclusive survival of his own religion and the destruction of the other, I pity him from the bottom of my heart, and point out to him that upon the banner of every religion will soon be written, in spite of resistance: 'Help and not fight', Assimilation and not Destruction', Harmony and Peace and not Dissension'.

Keshab Chandra Sen (1838-1884)

Keshab Chandra Sen laid stress on social reforms such as female education, inter-caste marriages and widow remarriage. He condemned social evils like child marriage, polygamy and casteism.



He vehemently criticised child marriage and played an important role in the passing of the Marriage Bill of 1872. He worked tirelessly for the emancipation of Indian women. Through his Brahma-Bandhu Sabha, he launched a fierce struggle in favour of women's education.

He was instrumental in passing of the Native Marriage Bill of 1872, which legalized inter-caste marriage, widow remarriage, prohibited child marriage and polygamy, and gave legal sanction to divorce. Education and emancipation of women was at the forefront of his programme. On his death, Max Muller said, 'India has lost her most eminent son.'



Keshab Chandra Sen
(1838-1884)

Maharashtra

Swami Dayanand Saraswati and the Arya Samaj

Swami Dayanand Saraswati founded Arya Samaj in 1875. At 22, he became a Sanyasi and roamed from place to place in search of Truth.

The following reforms took place in society because of the efforts of the Arya Samaj:

1. The Arya Samaj denounced Sati.
2. It advocated widow remarriage.
3. It was greatly opposed to child marriage.
4. It set up orphanages and widow-ashrams.
5. The Arya Samaj laid great emphasis on women's education. Swami Dayanand believed that women were equally entitled to study the Vedas like men.



Swami Dayanand Saraswati

Prathana Samaj

The Prathana Samaj was started in Bombay in 1867 by Mahadev Govind Ranade and Ram Krishna Bhandarkar. The samaj laid stress on the upliftment of the masses, education for females, abolition of *Purdah* system and remarriage of widows. It started night school for working people. Gopal Krishna Gokhale joined this Samaj in 1885. He along with Ranade founded the Indian Social Conference in 1887. They declared that no progress was possible in India unless Hindus and Muslims join hands.



Fact File

Gopal Hari Deshmukh was popularly known as 'Lokhitwadi'.

Gopal Hari Deshmukh and Jyotirao Govindrao Phule

They worked for the upliftment of the downtrodden and women. In 1848, they started schools for girls and low-caste children.

OTHER REFORMERS

Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain (1880-1932)

Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain was born in 1880 in a Bengali Muslim family. She was not allowed to study. Fortunately, She learn Bengali and English along with Urdu and Arabic at home. In 1896, she was married to a magistrate called Khan Bahadur Sakhawat Hossain,



from Bhagalpur in Bihar. Rokeya set up a school for girls in 1909 in Bhagalpur, with the support of her husband. After her husband's premature death, she came to Calcutta and opened a school named 'Sakhawat' Memorial Girl' School'. Later this school was converted into a high school and became a pioneering institution for Muslim girls.



Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain

Rokeya was a gifted writer. Throughout her life, she wrote passionately about the oppression, discrimination, sufferings and obstacles to development faced by women. She pleaded for the emancipation of women of all communities. She wrote many short stories and essays regarding the prevailing social taboos. In her column in *Abarodh basim* she strongly criticized the *purdah* system.

In 1924, his farsighted novel 'Padmarag' was published. In this work, we can find realistic portraits of pioneering working women—typing and managing accounts, supervising subordinates, teaching. In short, the glimpse of activities that women executives, teachers and managers undertake today.

Lila Nag (1900-1970)

Lila Nag, the first female student of the University of Dhaka contributed immensely to the intellectual and cultural awakening in India. She pioneered women's education and the women's movement in East Bengal. In December 1923, she established 'Dipali Sangha', an association for women, with the main objective of enhancing women's education. She founded School named Dipali School and twelve other free primary schools with the help of the Dipali Sangha.

She built a Dhaka-based institution for female students and extended its branches in many places of Assam and Bengal. She established a women's Hostel at Calcutta.

She set up a fund entitled 'Mahila Atmaraksa Fund' (Fund for Women's Self-defence), one of the first martial art self-defence groups in the region. She also established an institution known as 'Gana Shiksha Parisad' (Association for Mass Education) for spreading female education at a mass level. Lila's other claim to fame is her literary activity as editor of the influential magazine

Jayashree, devoted to women's issues.



Lila Nag

Pandita Ramabai (1858-1922)

In the 19th century, the condition of women was a much discussed issue among the intellectual class. It was in this fluid situation that Pandita Ramabai emerged on the scene, with all her electrifying energy directed towards securing a better deal for the women of India.

She started the **Arya Mahila Samaj** and taught women from the deprived classes. She went to America, where an association was formed to fund her school for child widows. Coming back to India, she inaugurated a school for widows in 1889, known as **Sharda Shadan** in Bombay.



Pandita Ramabai



Dhondo Keshab Karve

The year 1896 marks the beginning of a new era in the history of women's education in India, when Dr. Dhondo Keshab Karve established an ashram for widows and helpless women at Hingne near Pune. Karve launched a programme of schooling at his ashram, which later became a regular school for girls and women. He had a dream of establishing a women's university and finally, in July 1916, he started the first college with five students. It gradually took shape as a women's university.

In 1920, he started the Shrimati Nathibai Thackersey Women's University, popularly known today as SNDT Women's University.



Dhondo Keshab Karve



Fact File

Dr. Dhondo Keshab Karve was awarded Bharat Ratna in 1958, the year of his 100th birthday.

REFORM MOVEMENTS IN SOUTH INDIA

Chembeti Sridharalu Naidu

Inspired by the Brahma Samaj, Chembeti Sridharalu Naidu founded the Veda Samaj in 1864. This Samaj advocated abolition of caste distinctions. It promoted widow remarriage and women's education, propagated the oneness of God and asked people to discard the superstitions and rituals of Hinduism. He translated Brahma Samaj texts into Tamil and Telugu. The Veda Samaj later worked with branches of Brahma Samaj and Prarthana Samaj in Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka.

Kandukuri Veerasalingam and Sri Narayana Guru

Kandukuri Veerasalingam was inspired and influenced by Brahma Samaj. He was born in 1848, in an orthodox Brahmin family but all through his life, he opposed the caste system and low status of women.

Similarly, Sri Narayana Guru of Kerala took up the cause of the untouchables and worked for the upliftment of the untouchables. Since untouchables were not allowed to enter Hindu Temples, he built a temple near a river "Here is the place where all people live in fraternity without caste distinctions and religious rivalry." He founded an association in 1902 called Sri Narayana Dharma Paripalana yogam that popularised his belief of one caste, one Religion and one God.'



Kandukuri Verrasalingam

CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES

In its early years, the East India Company refrained from interfering in the socio-religious life of the people of India. The company had expelled William Carey for carrying on propaganda.



But by the Charter Act of 1813, the restrictions on the immigration of missionaries to India were removed. As a result missionaries began pouring into India, filled with a zeal to rid Indian society of what they regarded as its backwardness and barbarism.

Christian missionaries first arrived in Bengal in 1576. Thereafter, they came to India in different phases and with different motives. The Serampore missionaries played a crucial role in the spread of education among women in India. Prominent missionaries were William Carey, Joshua Marshman and William Ward. They started the first Baptist Mission in 1800 at Serampore in Bengal. For the emancipation of Indian women, William Ward made an appeal to his countrywomen and, responding to his call, a women missionary named Mary Ann Cooke came to India. She was the first woman missionary to come to India (1822). She opened many girls' Schools in different part of Bengal. In 1849, J.E.D Bethune founded a girls school in Calcutta.

IMPACT OF THE REFORM MOVEMENTS

The East India Company initiated some useful social reforms in India during the period 1813-1857, including.

1. Sati

It is estimated that during the period 1815-18, there were 800 cases of Sati in Bengal alone. This inhuman practice was declared illegal in 1829.

2. Ban on Female Infanticide

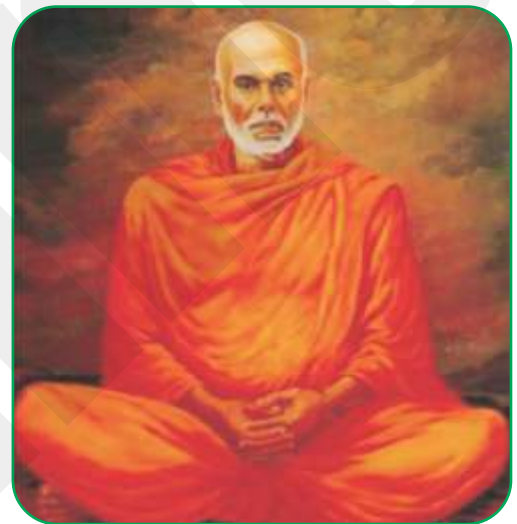
This practice was banned in 1795 but no strict measures were taken to implement the law. The evil Practice was boldly addressed during the tenure of Lord Harding (1844-48). In time female infanticide declined, but sadly, it is still prevalent today.

3. Suppression of Human Sacrifice

Lord Harding suppressed the practice of human sacrifices that had prevailed among primitive tribes such as the Gonds. However, it took a long time to eradicate.

4. Widow Remarriage

Raja Rammohan Roy, Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar, Mahadev Phule and Maharishi Karve campaigned in favour of widow remarriage for a long time. Finally, in 1856, the British government passed an Act allowing Hindu widows to remarry. Though the immediate effect of this measure was negligible, it has gained momentum over time and is socially quite acceptable today.



Sri Narayana Guru

Word Treasure

- infanticide* : Killing babies at birth.
pardah : A System of seclusion of women from the public.
emancipation : To free people from unjust social restrictions



Word Treasure

- humanism* : A philosophy that promotes human interests
legislation : A law passed by Parliament
orthodox : Those who believe in stale old traditions or customs

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The first female student at the University of Dhaka was—
 i) Lila Nag ii) Pandita Ramabai
 iii) Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain iv) Sarojini Naidu
- b. Sister Nivedita was a disciple of
 i) Mahatma Gandhi ii) Swami Vivekananda
 iii) Subhash Chandra Bose iv) Swami Ramananda
- c. Pandit Ramabai started the
 i) Arya Mahila Samaj ii) Azad Mahila Samaj
 iii) Arya Samaj iv) Brahmo Samaj
- d. Chembeti Sridharalu Naidu founded
 i) Veda Samaj ii) Arya Samaj
 iii) Braho Samaj iv) Prathana Sabha
- e. played an important role in the passing of Hindu Windows remarriage Act in 1856.
 i) Raja Rammohan Roy ii) Dayanand Saraswati
 iii) Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar iv) Lila Nag
- f. Dayanard Saraswati founded the in 1875.
 i) Brahmo Samaj ii) Arya Samaj
 iii) Prathana Samaj iv) Sharda Shadan
- g. Who started the SMOT women's University?
 i) Pandita Ramabai ii) Gopal Hari Deshmukh
 iii) Chembeti Sriduarvalu iv) Dhond

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. Name some women literary figures of the 19th century.
 b. Name prominent social reformers of Bengal.
 c. What was the impact of the reforms movement?
 d. Who founded the Boahmo Samaj?
 e. Who started the Prathana Samaj in Bombay?



3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. Discuss the role of Brahma Samaj in eradicating social evils.
- b. Discuss the contribution of Swami Vivekananda and the Ramakrishna Mission to Hindu society.
- c. Give an account of the Social and educational works of the Arya Samaj.
- d. Discuss about the Christian Missionaries of India.
- e. Discuss about the works of reformers like Rokeya Sakhawat Hossain and Lila Nag.



- 1. According to you what are the social evils that woman today are still facing?
- 2. Discuss the role of social reformers in Child marriage and widow re-marriage.

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. played an important role in the passing of the Widow Remarriage Act.
- b. In 1923, established Dipali Singha'.
- c. Begum Rokeya was a gifted
- d. Gopal Krishna Gokhale joined Samaj in 1885.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. In the 18th century, women did not have the right to inherit property.
- b. Ishwar Chandra Vidya sagar founded Brahma Sabha in 1828.
- c. Sister Nivedita opened a girl's school at Bagbatar in Calcutta.
- d. Roveya Sakhawat Hossain set up a fund entitled 'Mahila Atmaraksa Fund'.

6. Match the following.

Column 'A'

- a. Sharda Act
- b. Ved Samaj
- c. Pandita Ramabai
- d. Keshab Chandra Sen
- e. Ramakrishna Mission

Column 'B'

- (i) Brahma -Bandhu Sabha
- (ii) Swami Vivekananda
- (iii) 1864
- (iv) 1929
- (v) Sharda Sadan

7. Give one word answer.

- a. According to Hindu Mythology, She was the wife of Daksha.
- b. Sharda Act was passed in this year.
- c. He founded the Brahma Sabha in 1828.
- d. His childhood name was Narendranath.
- e. Arya Mahila Samaj was founded by her.



Value Based Questions

Do you think our nation respects its women? How do you think we can make a difference in our own way towards creating respect for women in our society?

Activity Zone

Collect the news related to women discrimination for a month from newspapers prepare a report based on that. Suggest measures to check this menace.





Challenging the Caste System



Key Highlights

- ❖ Famous social reformers who opposed the evils of age-old caste system in society
- ❖ Consequences of the Reform Activities

Let's Start With



The social reformer, after attacking the negative social customs and practices, targeted the rigid division of castes and discriminatory practices. During the British period, there were some major social reform movements that protested against the social inequality and discrimination which existed in our society.

HISTORY

The Indian caste system is another name for the social stratification prevalent in the Indian subcontinent, where social classes are defined by thousands of hereditary groups often termed as jatis or castes.

The caste System has been prevalent in our society since the ancient period. According to the Hindu scriptures, there are four varnas: Brahmans (teachers, scholars and priests), Kshatriyas (kings and warriors), Vaishyas (traders) and Sudras (agriculturists, artisan groups). Although the political power was in the hands of the Kshatriyas, Brahmans traditionally enjoyed prestige and privileges.

India witnessed a series of social and religious movements during the 19th and early decades of the 20th century. The main aim of the 19th century reformers was to spread knowledge so as to literate people from deep-rooted superstitions and social evils. The force behind these movements was the emergence of a new intelligentsia, a class which was exposed to western education and growing contacts between India and the western world.

Here, we will study about different caste reform movements pioneered by distinguished Indian reformers in different parts of India. It will give us valuable insights into their way of handling the issue of social reform.



VERRASALINGAM

Kandukuri Veerasalingam was a social reformer from Andhra Pradesh. Born in an orthodox Andhra family, he is widely considered as the man who first brought about a renaissance in the Telangana region.

There was excessive caste rigidity in Andhra Pradesh in 19th century. Social life was dominated by the caste system and religious dogma, and it was impossible to make a clear distinction between the two. Child marriage, polygamy, devadasis, dowry and superstition were prevalent evils. Untouchables' and social outcasts were not treated as human beings. Western education and ideas of reform had created an impact on a small section of the populace which could be termed as the intelligentsia .

In Andhra Pradesh the cultural renaissance and the reform movement were both started by Veerasalingam Pantulu, who hailed from Rajamundri. Though he came from an orthodox family, he realised that the prevailing customs and traditions were not rational. He was deeply influenced by the writings of Keshab Chandra Sen. Reforms related to women were his first priority. He worked to eradicate child marriage, polygamy and sati projecting his arguments through a drama, Brahmvivahamic, serialised in his journal Hayasanjivani.

Vivekvaradhani published by Veerasalingam, was the journal devoted to uncompromising social regeneration. Veerasalingam was pioneer in borrowing from both English and Sanskrit literature through his satirical novel Prahasanam - a new literary genre—and plays, to propagate his ideas on social reforms. In his speeches and writings. Veerasalingam focussed on the need to spread scientific knowledge and rational way of thinking. He advocated for the spread of scientific education in local languages. He believed that social reform should take place along with political reform, if not before it. In his presidential address at the Indian Social Conference in 1888, he declared that; "I believe the political development of a country must largely depend upon the social condition of the community which supplies the physical, intellectual and moral resources of the people." He was a typical representative of early Indian nationalism.



Veerasalingam (1848-1919)



Fact File

Sister Nivedita was a prominent disciple of Swami Vivekananda. Her real name was Margaret Elizabeth inspired by his teachings, she came to India from Ireland and dedicated her life towards working for the poor and emancipation of women.

SRI NARAYANA GURU (KERALA)

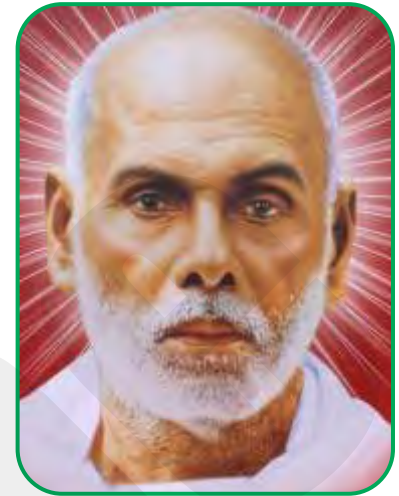
Sri Narayana Guru was the apostle of social equality. He was a great saint and social



reformer. He was born at Chempazhanthi, a small village in Kerala in 1856. He belonged to the Ezhava community, which constituted the single largest community among the downtrodden classes in Kerala. A religious person since his childhood, Sri Narayana Guru did not believe in the caste system. He was determined to eradicate the social disabilities imposed on lower castes.

Narayana Guru realised the evils of casteism and pioneered the lower caste movement in Kerala. To change the mindset of the masses, he founded an organisation in 1903 called SNDP - the Shree Narayan Dharam Paripalana Yogam. He struggled to lift up the downtrodden and worked for their rightful place in society.

His most significant message was: 'one caste, one religion, one God for man.' He preached that all of us belong to one caste: the human caste. The Hindu texts themselves clarify that it is not janma (birth) that determines castes, but guna, (aptitude/ability/interest) and karma, (occupation/activities/work).

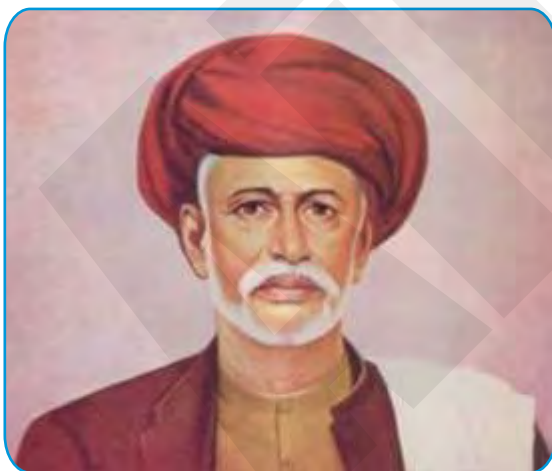


Sri Narayana Guru

In 1888 one Sivaratri night, Narayana Guru picked up a sivalinga from the Neyyar River and consecrated (to make/declare sacred) it at Aruvippuram near Trivandrum. When challenged, he replied, mildly 'It was only an Ezhava Siva that I consecrated.' The great irony of that-simple statement- how could Siva belong to any particular caste? - reverberated throughout the land. This was the very first Satyagraha, a peaceful, non-violent protest against obvious injustice.

JYOTIBA PHULE (MAHARASHTRA)

Jyotiba Phule was born in 1827 in Poona and studied in christian missionary schools. Since his father and uncles served as florists under the Peshwas, they came to be known as Phule. Jyotiba was greatly influenced by Thomas Paine's ideas.



Jyotiba Phule (Maharashtra)

A painful incident made him aware of the inequities of the caste system. He was invited to attend a wedding ceremony of his Brahmin friend, where he was insulted in the name of caste. Deeply hurt, Jyotiba struggled throughout his life to defy the caste system and serve the Shudras and women who were deprived of all their rights as human beings. He strongly attacked the strong hold of Brahmins, believing that they blocked others from gaining access to avenues of knowledge and influence. He appealed the masses to resist the tyranny of the Brahmins.

In 1873, He founded Satya Shodhak Samaj (Society of Seekers of Truth). The main objectives of the organisation were to liberate the Shudras. All the members of the organisation were

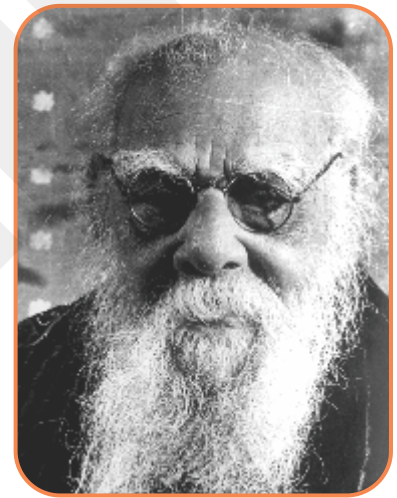


expected to treat human beings as children of God. He opposed idolatry and supported widow remarriage and women's education. He stressed on the unity of man and envisaged a society based on liberty equality and fraternity. In 1873, Phule wrote Gulamgiri, meaning slavery which was dedicated to all those Americans. He passed away on 28 November 1890.

'PERIYAR' E.V. RAMASWAMY (TAMIL NADU)

The Indian Socrates, E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker was born at Erode town in Tamil Nadu in 1879. In 1904, he left home for Vijayawada. After some time, he went to Kashi, a sacred town of the Hindus. There, he was not allowed to attend a feast which was exclusively for Brahmins. This event left a lasting impact on the mind of young Periyar. Consequently, thinking on his renunciation led him back to family life. He was an ardent supporter of social equality. His philosophy was based on social justice and rational outlook. He condemned casteism in all its forms, and started the Vaikom movement against untouchability. Many popular national leaders like Gandhiji, Rajagopalachari and Acharya Vinoba Bhave participated in this movement. Finally, the Raja of Travancore abolished this inhuman practice by an Act.

He founded the first non-Brahminical organisation in South India, in 1917, which was later known as the Justice Party. He accused the Congress of being a party of Brahmins. He started the Self Respect Movement and actively participated in the Khadi propaganda, the movement for prohibition, and led the Vaikom movement for allowing 'lower caste' people to enter temples. His followers called him Thanthai (father) and Periyar (Great Soul).



Periyar E.V. Ramaswamy

Let's Think

Dr. B.R. Ambedkar had an ideological difference with Gandhiji. What was that? Why did he save such difference?

DR. B.R. AMBEDKAR (MAHARASHTRA)



Dr. B.R. Ambedkar

B.R. Ambedkar occupies a unique position among the social reformers of the twentieth century. He belonged to the Mahor caste and as a child, he had to tolerate a lot of injustice. Dr. Ambedkar opposed the humiliating caste system under which millions of people had suffered for centuries. He fought for the cause of the untouchables and tried to raise their social status.

In July 1924, Ambedkar started the Bahishkrit Hitakarini Sabha, an organisation whose objective was to raise the moral and material status of the untouchables. He also

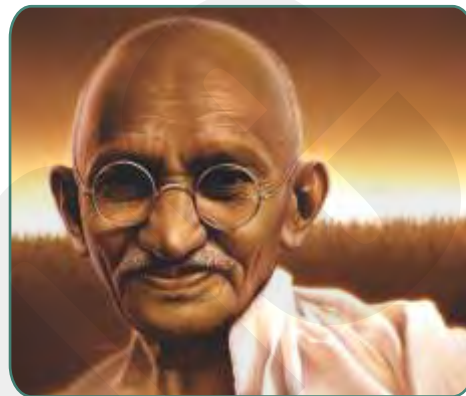


struggled for the untouchables 'right to temple entry and to draw water from public wells. In 1930, he made his presence felt in national politics. He demanded separate electorates for untouchables. He participated in the Round Table Conferences and argued strongly in favour of upliftment of the oppressed classes.

He wrote a number of books, published journals and established institutions to promote the interests of the oppressed classes. In 1942, he founded the Schedule Caste Federation as an All India Party.

MAHATMA GANDHI

Gandhiji felt that political independence had no significance without social independence. He, therefore, merged the two streams-social reforms and freedom movement-taking up constructive work for the uplift of Harijans and women. He founded Harijan Sevak Sangh and Sewagram (Wardha) as a part of his freedom movement. Gandhiji combined in all the qualities and strengths that social and political movements typically need.



Mahatma Gandhi

He fought the evils of untouchability and poverty. He insisted on the equal status of women and men. His followers lent their services voluntarily undertaking manual work for developing the community. Gandhiji gave equal weightage to both means and work.



Fact File

'Harijan' was a newspaper first published on 11 February, 1933, brought out by Mahatma Gandhi from Yerwada Jail.

CONSEQUENCES OF THE REFORM ACTIVITIES

National leader and social reformers like Gandhi, Phule and others realised quite early that the country could never achieve freedom without the active participation of all sections of Hindu society. Therefore, it was important to uplift the untouchables and lower castes. Attempts to eradicate untouchability and the launching of Harijan Sewak Sangh were aimed at achieving this political and social aim.

Like most of the other reformers, Gandhi did not want to disturb the basic structure of Hindu society. Ambedkar, however, did take a shy at structural change, with special emphasis on removing the social stigma burdening the lower castes.

The inequalities within the caste system are not ordained by religion; they are a result of social distinctions initially based on functions. These later degenerated into a rigid social structure where power and privileged were unequally distributed Higher castes (who had performed the functions of religious rites and purveying education) acquired



monopoly over sacred rituals, access to scriptural texts and relatively greater access to power and privileges. The maintenance of this power structure perpetuates inequalities and the disabilities of the lower castes, which form the base of the power - privilege pyramid.

The influence of western culture and the introduction of modern education by the British, affected individuals in a two-fold manner. It fuelled an ambition for a progressive and improved social structure, but It created a deep-felt resentment among rigid traditionalists against the reformers, who were struggling for social justice.

Thus, the society got the message that many of those traditions which were detrimental to society were nevertheless an intrinsic part of the Hindu religion. Change happens in the mind, hence reformers have to first change the way people think—the way in which they see their world - before change can manifest itself. Education was the sole solution, because it broadens the mind and encourages rationalism that sets the stage for change.



Fact File

- ❖ Dadabhai Naoraji along with U.B. wacha started the Rahnumai Mazdayasan Sabha for safeguarding of the Parsis against the evils of society and also to protect the Zoroastrain religion.
- ❖ The Shiromani Gurudwara Prabandhak committee led a movement for the reforms and proper functioning of the Gurudwaras for the welfare of the sikh community.



Word Treasure

- untouchables* : The lowest varna of the Indian caste system
- caste* : Any rigid system of social distinctions, based on birth
- high caste* : High social position conferred upon one by the caste system
- devadasi* : A hereditary female dancer in a Hindu temple

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

a. Kandukuri Veerasalingam was influenced by

i) Keshab Chandra Sen

ii) Rokeya Sakhawat Hussain

iii) Rabindranath Tagore

iv) Munshi Prem Chand

b. Harijan Sevak Sangh was founded by

i) Jyotiba Phule

ii) Shri Narayana Guru

iii) Mahatma Gandhi

iv) Veerasalingam



- c. founded the Schedule Caste Federations as an All India Party.
- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Raja Rammohan Roy | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Mahatma Gandhi | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. 'Gulamgiri' was written by
- | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Ishwar Chandra Vidyasagar | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Jyotiba Phule | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Sri Narayana Guru | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) B.R. Ambedkar | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. Dadabhai Naoroji was a reformer.
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| i) Hindu | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Muslim | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Sikh | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Parsi | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- f. felt that political independence had no significance without social independence.
- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| i) B.R. Ambedkar | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Mahatma Gandhi | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Jyotiba Phule | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Narayana Guru | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- g. Jyotiba Phute, founded the Satya Shodhak Samaj in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1890 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1877 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1873 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 1903 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- h. He led the Vaikom movement for allowing lower caste people to enter temples.
- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) E.V. Ramaswamy | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Veerasalingam | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Narayana Guru | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Dr. B. R. Ambedkar | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- Write a short note on the Vaikom movement in Kerala. Who started it?
- What was Gandhiji's role in removing social inequalities?
- How was B.R. Ambedkar's movement different from those of other social reformers?
- Why did most of the social reforms did not want to disturb the basic structure of the Hindu society?
- Who founded the first non-brahminical organisation in South India?
- What kind of Social in equalities are prevailing in modern India?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Discuss the existence of the caste system in India.
- What did Veerasalingam do for uplifting the depressed classes?
- Discuss the role of Narayan Guru in reforming the Ezhava community.
- Give a brief account of the efforts made by Jyotiba Phule to promote the interests of untouchables.
- Who founded the organisation called Shree Narayan Dharam Paripalana?
- Why did Narayana Guru gives the message of 'one cast, one religion, one God for man'?





1. Why is B.R. Ambedkar called the architect of the Indian constitution?
2. Why did Mahatma Gandhi not want to disturb the structure of Hindu society?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. was born in an orthodox Andhra family.
- b. said "One caste, one religion, one God for man."
- c. B.R. Ambedkar belonged to caste.
- d. The Raja of abolished the inhuman practice of untouchability.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. The caste system came in existence in India in 18th century.
- b. Veerasalingam Pantulu was a social reformer from Andhra Pradesh.
- c. The Hindu texts clarify that Janma, not Karma, determines caste.
- d. E.V. Ramaswamy founded the first Brahminical organisation in East India.
- e. Most of the social reformers did not want to disturb the basic structure of Hindu society.

6. Match the following.

Column 'A'

- a. Prahasanam
- b. Satya Sodhak Samaj
- c. SNDP
- d. Sewagram
- e. Indian Socrates

Column 'B'

- (i) Periyar
- (ii) Gandhiji
- (iii) Veerasalingam
- (iv) Sri Narayan Guru
- (v) Jyotiba Phule

7. Give one word answer.

- a. Those who come in the Kshatriyas.
- b. His most significant message was one caste, one religion, one god for man.
- c. Gulamgini was written by him.
- d. He accused the congress of being a party of Brahmins.
- e. He founded Harijan Seva Sangh and Sewagram as a part of his freedom movement.



Value Based Questions

Even after 65 years of India's independence, caste prejudices exist in most parts of the Country. Why is it so?

Activity Zone

Find out the social evils faced by Indian women in 18th century and names of reformers who did their best to remove these evils.





Colonialism and Urban Change



Key Highlights

- ❖ Urbanization in Medieval India
- ❖ Urbanization and De-urbanization in Colonial India
- ❖ Development of Infrastructure and Administration
- ❖ Case study of Delhi

Let's Start With



The story of urbanization in India goes back to 2350 BC. India witnessed the first phase of urbanization during the Indus Valley Civilization from around 600 BC. India has a more or less continuous history of urbanization. Urbanization is closely linked with the rise and decline of kingdoms and dynasties in the Medieval Period. The second major social and cultural influence on the Indian urban scene was brought by the Mughals.

HISTORY

URBANIZATION IN MEDIEVAL INDIA

In the northern part of India, the period between the 6th century A.D. and the 13th century A.D. witnessed a wave of de-urbanization, due to the issues such as political instability and economic decline. A revival urbanization had been seen during the coming of Delhi Sultans and the Mughals. Some towns emerged as trading centers, manufacturing centres and towns developed under the patronage of rulers. The capital cities of the rulers became important administrative and economic centres. With the gradual weakening and decline of the Mughal Empire, from the late 17th century onwards, a large number of independent and semi-independent states arose. These were Bengal, Awadh, Hyderabad, Mysore and the kingdom of the Marathas.

It was unfortunate that many prosperous cities, which were the centres of flourishing industries, were ransacked and devastated. Invasions by Nadir Shah, Ahmed Shah Abdali and some local chieftains devastated flourishing cities such as Delhi and Lahore. Queen Victoria was formally announced as the Empress of India by the British after 1857.



Large tracts of land were seized by the British and goods were sent back to England. In those days, Indian markets were full of British made goods. The local industries, like the textile industry were ruined. The famine in Bengal (1843) killed 30 lakh people. Delhi held a position of prominence for centuries. However, due to the arrival of the British. Towns and cities emerged as commercial trading centres, capital towns and pilgrimage centres. The process of urbanization and de-urbanization was on rise whereas kingdoms and dynasties were on decline.

DE-URBANIZATION AND URBANIZATION IN COLONIAL INDIA

With the coming of the European powers, different pockets of the country became colonies of various imperialist powers. Cochin, Goa, Daman and Diu were under Portuguese dominance, whereas, Chandernagore and Pondicherry were founded by the French. These cities still exhibit French traits.

Under British rule, some cities lost their prominence over a period of time due to various reasons :

- There was closure of old ports and trading centres. Trade and commerce shifted to newer centres and ports. The power of many regional rulers collapsed while the British established their administration.
- The demand for locally made goods in smaller cities reduced. The towns and cities, which had flourished for their handicrafts, such as Agra, Surat, Cambay and Indore, declined.

This process of de-urbanization gradually made many towns and cities lose importance. The British policy, of ruining traditional Indian economy, led to de-urbanization. However, the British patronized some urban centres, to suit their imperialistic tendencies.

Bombay (Mumbai), Madras (Chennai) and Calcutta (Kolkata) emerged as the three colonial presidencies and important trading points because of their location.

Bombay

Surat was the headquarter of the East India Company still Bombay gained more prominence than Surat. Its strategic location on the seashore soon helped it to become a naval base.

Let's Think

How did the development of railways takes place in India?

Kolkata

In Kolkata, the British established Fort William to fortify their possessions. After the British won the Battle of Plassey, Kolkata became the headquarters of the East India Company. By the Regulating Act of 1773, the Governor of Kolkata was made the Governor-General of India and the Governors of Madras and Bombay were made subservient to him. Kolkata remained the British capital till 1911.



Madras

Madras became a Presidency in 1658. All factories of the Coromandel coast were subordinated to it.

Port Towns

Masulipatnam and Surat were the important ones among the port towns. Surat was the center of trade and manufacturing. In Masulipatnam, the East India Company built its first factory in India.

Hill Stations

Many famous hill stations such as Mussourie, Shimla, Darjeeling, Ooty and Dalhousie were developed by the British to work in cool climates. The tea and coffee plantations in Assam and Kerala led to the emergence of plantation towns with distinct urban features.

The British developed many cantonment towns also. A cantonment town is an area under the army which is administered by them as a separate body. These included Meerut, Kanpur and Lansdowne which housed different units of British army.



Thomas Munro

DEVELOPMENT OF INFRASTRUCTURE AND ADMINISTRATION

The British rulers understood clearly that cheap and easy means of transport was a necessity for British-manufactured products to flow into India and for Indian raw materials to be sent to England for British industries. So there was a lot of development in these areas. Major cities, ports and markets of the country were linked by road. The first railway line from Bombay to Thane opened for traffic in 1853, which was fully developed by 1900, connecting towns and cities throughout the country.

The opening of a **railway system** benefited everyone. Thousands of Indians found employment in the laying of tracks. Movement of goods and cargo was faster and cheaper. Indians became much more mobile and many social taboos were broken because of people travelling together.

The British also established an efficient and modern **postal and telegraph** system. The first telegraph line from Calcutta to Agra was opened in 1853. Lord Dalhousie also introduced postage stamps.



Fact File

In 19th century, there were only two half-finished trunk roads in India, one between Delhi and Calcutta (New Kolkata) and the other between Bombay (now Mumbai) and Agra.



Public Works and Municipalities

There were improvements in civic facilities in some major Indian cities during the British rule. Piped water supply, street lights, domestic water supply, sewage, parks and playgrounds were set up in large cities, mainly in the cantonments and civil lines. Urban administrative bodies began to be set up from 1881 to look after civic problems. They primarily looked after collection of local taxes, maintenance of roads, removal of garbage, primary education and public health.

Local Government

Cornwallis Code (1793) gave legal form to the complex measures that constituted the administrative framework in British India. The local administration was placed in the hands of the revenue collectors of districts.

Police Administration

Lord Cornwallis established, for the first time, a regular police force to maintain law and order. The **Indian Penal Code** was formed in 1860 under Lord Macaulay. This code charted out various categories of criminals. Further, the **Indian Police Act** of 1861 marked the final change from the Mughal System to the British Raj.

The main objective of police reforms under the **Indian Police Act** was to set up a uniform and effective police administration in India. The police force was arranged under local government and police administration extended to all districts. *Thanas* with *darogas* were set up. The post of Inspector General of Police was created for the first time.

Let's Think

What steps were taken by the British to strengthen the infrastructure?

CASE STUDY OF DELHI

Delhi, the capital of India, is one of the oldest cities in the world. The history of Delhi goes back more than 3000 years. Traditionally, Delhi is said to be the site of Indraprastha, the capital of the Pandavas of the Mahabharata. It was however, the beginning of the medieval period that Delhi began to take the shape of a proper city. It has been the seat of several mighty empires. Many ancient monuments dotting the landscape of Delhi speak about its history.

Delhi became the seat of power of the Delhi Sultans. The Mughals gave the city a grand façade with havelis, gardens, canals and lakes.

It was only in 1911 that Delhi became the capital of British India, earlier, Calcutta was the capital. Attempting to suppress the revolt of 1857, the British forces plundered the city of Delhi, killing commoners and burning their homes. Bahadur Shah, the last Mughal emperor was exiled and sent to Burma in fear of another rebellion. They then stationed their troops and walled the city.



The British constructed impressive buildings especially in the area around Civil Lines and Kashmiri Gate. The Flagstaff Tower on the northern ridge was the place where the Britishers assembled during the Revolt of 1857. It is a cake-shaped building located on the highest point of the ridge. Several other buildings such as Mutiny Memorial and Charbhuj stand nearby. The green tract around the area was developed by the British after the 1857 revolt was over.



Kashmiri Gate



Rashtrapati Bhawan

The Coronation Durbar Memorial was the place where King George V was declared as the Emperor of India in 1911. In 1932, New Delhi, which was planned and built by Edwin Lutyens, was inaugurated as the capital of British India. The Rashtrapati Bhawan, Connaught Place and New Delhi Railway Station were constructed during this period.

Many soldiers lost their lives in First World War. India Gate was built in their memory. Designed by

Edward Lutyens, it is 42 metres high and built of red Bharatpur stone. Amar Jawan Jyoti is an India memorial constructed in memory of soldiers who laid down their lives during the 1971 Indo-Pak war.

The Raisina Hill is one of the most notable examples of Lutyen's Delhi. The President's residence, Rashtrapati Bhawan, stands in the middle. Its architecture (especially the dome) has Roman as well as Indian influence. The huge building has 340 rooms.

The Secretariat, built by Herbert Baker, known as the North Block and the South Block, stands on either side of the Rashtrapati Bhawan. The Rajpath runs from the Rashtrapati Bhawan to India Gate, which hosts the grand Republic Day parade every year.

Near the Rajpath is the Parliament House, the seat of Indian democracy. It is a huge circular columned building with three chambers—the Lok Sabha, the Rajya Sabha and the Central Library. It has a balcony running all around.

Delhi's uniqueness lies in its harmonious blend of old and new architecture and especially in the way it has risen a countless times from the ruins of invasion to open yet another page in history.



India Gate



Word Treasure

- urbanization** : turning of country side in a town having streets, factories etc.
- de-urbanization** : decline and disintegration of towns and cities
- Patronized** : treat with an apparent kindness that betrays a feeling of superiority
- invasions** : an instance of invading a country or region with an armed forced
- cantonment** : a military garrison or camp

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The first railway line from opened for traffic in 1853.
 - i) Nagpur to Pune
 - ii) Bombay to Thane
 - iii) Bombay to Pune
 - iv) PunetoThane
- b. The Indian Penal Code was drawn up in 1860 under
 - i) Lord Macaulay
 - ii) Lord Cornwallis
 - iii) Lord Canning
 - iv) Lord Clive
- c. Which one of the following was the Summer Capital of the British?
 - i) Ooty
 - ii) Shimla
 - iii) Darjeeling
 - iv) Dalhousie
- d. The first telegraph line from was opened in 1853.
 - i) Bombay to Nagpur
 - ii) Calcutta to Agra
 - iii) Merrut to Madras
 - iv) Pune to Delhi
- e. Which one of these became a Presidency in 1658.
 - i) Bombay
 - ii) Calcutta
 - iii) Madras
 - iv) Cochin
- f. was planned and built by Edwin Lutyens.
 - i) New Delhi
 - ii) Agra
 - iii) Shimla
 - iv) Chandigarh



2. Write short answer for the following questions

- a. What changes were introduced in the civic amenities by the British?
- b. Name three groups of cities which emerged in the 18th century in India
- c. What are cantonment towns?
- d. Prior to Delhi, which city was the capital of British India?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. Why did some cities lose their prominence under British rule?
- b. What was the process of urbanization and de-urbanization of towns before the arrival of the British?
- c. What was the main objective of the police reforms under the Indian Police Act? What changes did it bring about?
- d. What were the improvements in civic facilities in major Indian cities during the British rule?



Why did the British feel the need to establish an efficient transportation system in India? What were the developments in transport.

4. Fill in the blanks.

- a. was established by the British to fortify their possessions.
- b. was drawn up under Lord Macaulay in the year 1860.
- c. Lord Dalhousie introduced
- d. The Indian Police Act was passed in the year

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. Britain's economy underwent a major change due to the Industrial Revolution.
- b. Delhi was an important trading centre.
- c. Calcutta was the capital of all French possessions.

6. Match the following :

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| a. Lutyens | i) Built by Herbert Baker |
| b. Indraprastha | ii) Opened in 1853 |
| c. The secretariat | iii) An architect |
| d. Shimla | iv) Capital of Panchwar |
| e. First telegraph line | v) A hill station |

Value Based Questions

1. What were the main reasons that led to the decline of towns and cities during the British period?
2. How was the Indian textile industry different from the other industries during the British rule?





Changes in the Arts : Painting, Literature and Architecture



Key Highlights

- ❖ Development of the Press
- ❖ Contribution of European Scholars in the spread of Learning and Literature
- ❖ Major Developments in the field of Literature
- ❖ Developments in Music, Dance, Painting and Art
- ❖ Case studies of Mumbai and Chennai as centers of Architecture

Let's Start With



Indian art and culture has absorbed outside impact by varying degrees, and has become richer in its exposure. This cross fertilization between different art streams converging on the subcontinent while retaining the essence of the past produced new forms and succeeded in integrating selected elements of the new influences. In the 19th century, with the beginning of colonial rule, there were frequent tides of protest against exploitations. India's social-political life was articulated by the creative minds in their works. Painters and sculptors captured the spirit of freedom and nationalism through depiction of scenes from contemporary life. Through the study of the history of art we can know about our past.

HISTORY

DEVELOPMENT OF THE PRESS

The introduction of English education acquainted Indians with the modern trends in literature and arts, specially in Europe. In the 19th century, Indians became aware and informed of all these developments, because of the growth of Indian press, both in English and regional languages. The first printing press in Calcutta was established in 1778.



Fact File

The first and the most creative period of the art of painting extends from the 1st to the 7th centuries.



Political awakening and nationalism were fostered with the help of the press. Newspapers expressed the discontent in people and their political demands. They played an important role in awakening the people by spreading information on various issues. Some of these were *The Hindu*, *Kesari* and *Amrita Bazaar Patrika*.

These are some important **newspapers** of the 19th century :

Journalist	Newspaper
G. Subramania Iyer	<i>Hindu</i> and <i>Swadesamitran</i>
B.G. Tilak	<i>Kesari</i> and <i>Mahratta</i>
S.K. Ghosh and Motilal Ghosh	<i>Amrit Bazaar Patrika</i>
N.N. Sen	<i>Indian Mirror</i>
Dadabhai Jaoraji	<i>Voice of India</i>
Mahatma Gandhi	<i>Young India</i>

CONTRIBUTION OF EUROPEAN SCHOLARS TOWARDS LEARNING AND LITERATURE

- In 1783, William Jones came to India and started the revival of interest in ancient Indian culture. He founded the **Asiatic Society of Bengal** in 1784 with an aim to research India's past, and many Indian scholars became its members. They studied Indian art, architecture and philosophy. William Jones translated Kalidasa's *Abhijnanasakuntalam* into English.
- An official of the East India Company, **James Princep**, deciphered the Brahmi script in which edicts of Ashoka were written. As a result, a great deal of information was gathered about Ashoka and the splendour of the Mauryan Empire.
- A German scholar, **Max Mueller**, was attracted to the study of ancient art, history and philosophy of India. He edited and translated the Rig Veda into English.

MAJOR DEVELOPMENTS IN THE FIELD OF LITERATURE

The pride in India's past achievements led to an awakening and a **cultural** renaissance, which saw great developments in the realms of literature, painting, architecture, music and dance. At that time, many books and poems were written by Indian authors and poets. Munshi Premchand, Subramanya Bharati, Bankim Chandra Chatterjee and Rabindranath Tagore are a few examples of Indian authors and poets. Brilliant literary work in Telegu, Oriya, Marathi, Assamese and Urdu was also created. Many developments took place in Indian languages with the influence of modern ideas.

- Novels, short stories, dramas and essays began to develop in new forms of literary writing. Prose became the dominant style of writing.



- Literature became more realistic. Literary works expressed day-to-day problems and struggles of individuals. Dinabandhu Mitra's drama *Neel Darpan* spoke about the plight of the indigo cultivators.
- Nationalism and freedom movement replaced mythology and religion and subjects of literary works replacing mythology and religion. This helped in the spread of the spirit of nationalism.
- A plethora of literary works were produced in regional Indian languages.
- The introduction of the printing press contributed greatly to the production and spread of literature.



Fact File

The Nobel Prize for Literature in 1913 was awarded to Rabindranath Tagore for his work of poetry *Geetanjali*.

During the 19th and 20th centuries there were some of the prominent works of **fiction** as follows :

Novelist	Work
Bankim Chandra Chatterjee	<i>Anandamath</i> (constains India's national song <i>Vande Mataram</i>)
Michael Madhusudan Dutta	<i>Meghnadvadh Kavya</i>
Bibhut Bhushan Bandopadhyay	<i>Pather Panchali</i>
Rabindranath Tagore	<i>Gora, Ghare Baize</i>
Munshi Premchand	<i>Godaan, Ranghbhoomi</i>
Yashpal	<i>Jhootha Sach</i>
Phanishwar Nath Renu	<i>Maila Anchal</i>
Gopinath	<i>Praja</i> (Oriya)
Panna Lal Patel	<i>Makelajeet</i> (Gujarati)
Sharat Chandra Chattopadhyay	<i>Srikanta, Devdas</i>
Tara Shankar Chattopadhyay	<i>Ganadevta</i>
Manik Bandopadhyay	<i>Padmanadir Majhi</i>

Short stories became a separate and popular genre. Rabindranath Tagore, Munshi Premchand, Saadat Hasan Manto, Rajendra Singh Bedi and Kishan Chandra are known for their contribution to the growth of short stories.

European literature had a profound impact on the Indian literary scene. This led to the birth of romantic poetry in India. But the romanticism of Indian poetry spoke of nationalism and the themes related to anti-imperialism. Some notable poets of this period were Rabindranath Tagore (Bengali), Mohammed Iqbal (Urdu), Subramanya Bharathi (Tamil), Keshavsut (Marathi), Ajneya, Nirala (Hindi), Qazi Nazrul Islam (Bengali).



DEVELOPMENTS IN MUSIC, DANCE, PAINTING AND ART

Music

In the 19th century, **Carnatic music** became popular in the southern India. It was encouraged by the Wodeyar Kings of the Mysore Kingdom and the Maratha Kings of Thanjavur Kingdom. **Hindustani music** in North India was enriched due to the efforts of musicians like Pandit Vishnu Digamber Paluskar and Chaturpandit Vishnu Narayan Bhatkande.

In India, western music also emerged in those days. A new style of Bengali music, Rabindra sangeet was developed by Rabindranath Tagore.

Dance

In the south, temple dance gained prominence. West Bengal made huge contributions in the development of dance through **Rabindranath Tagore's Rabindra Nritya** and **Uday Shankar's popular ballet dance**. Other regional classical dance forms like *Odissi*, *Kathak* and *Kathakali* became more popular in India.

Painting and Art

A rich Indian tradition of art and culture was already established well before the beginning of the 20th century. A rich heritage of art and painting is found in temples, caves, mosques and palaces in India. Artists adorned courts of rulers such as Chandragupta Vikramaditya and Mughal Emperors like Akbar and Jahangir. Since ancient times, different schools of art such as the Mathura School, the Gandhara School, the Rajput School and the Mughal School have flourished.

The British and European influence on art in India is quite evident. They introduced landscape paintings depicting India to be very picturesque. Oil painting was introduced in India by the British. Portraits were commissioned by affluent Indian families.

The mid-19th century saw the fusion of the Renaissance and contemporary neo-classical styles of painting. New art schools in Bombay, Madras and Calcutta patronized new techniques in painting. The proper growth of art education in India began with setting up of the **Calcutta School of Industrial Art** in 1864 (this became the Government School of Art later).

Raja Ravi Verma was a painter and sculptor from Kerala. He tried to combine European naturalism with myths and legends. The themes of his paintings were related to the Indian epics and Sanskrit literature. Like Raja Ravi Verma, Several artists chose a painting style developed in West.



Raja Ravi Verma's masterpiece

Let's Think

Do you think theatre has a mass appeal? Why or why not?



In the early 20th century, during the British rule, the Bengal School of Art was another influential school that flourished in India. This school blended traditional Indian themes with western and emerging nationalist art. Rabindranath Tagore, Havell and Coomarswamy were important figures belonging to this school. **Kala Bhavan**, of Rabindranath Tagore's Visva Bharati, at Shantiniketan served as a centre for the Bengal School of Painting. Binod Behari Mukherjee, Ramkinkar Baij and Jamini Roy were some other stalwarts belonging to this school.

Amrita Shergil and **George Keyt** were well-versed with modern European art and modern expressions. Amrita Shergil's figures of women were purely Indian and her oil paintings were diverse in themes. George Keyt used sweeping lines which had diverse colours.

In the 1930s, at the time of the Indian national movement, new political forces had an effect on art forms too. Leading artists of this period were Paritosh Sen, Nirode Majumdar and Prakash Das Gupta. Nanda Lal Bose painted scenes from ancient legends and from the daily life of artisans and craftsmen.



Fact File

Some of the languages spoken in ancient India which had rich literary tradition have become extinct, e.g., Pali.

Let's Think

Who is known as the 'Grand Old Man' of Indian Cinema?

CASE STUDIES OF MUMBAI AND CHENNAI AS CENTRES OF ARCHITECTURE

The arrival of the Europeans in India left an impact on Indian architecture as well. The Dutch, Portuguese and the French were known for their buildings but it was the English who left behind an indelible impression. The British introduced different features in their buildings. Some of them were the use of grand columns and pillars. Their architecture included stained glass windows, towers and arches: The Victoria Memorial, in Kolkata, was built to honour the British Empire and is a blend of Hindu, Islamic and western architecture.

Mumbai

The Victoria Terminus formally known as Chhatrapati Shivaji Terminus is a historic railway station, built in 1888. It was named after the Queen of England, Queen Victoria. It was recognized as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2004. The Gateway of India, one of the most prominent structures in the city, was built to mark the visit of King George V and Queen Mary in 1911.

Prince of Wales Museum, is another striking building situated near the Gateway of India. It was constructed to commemorate the visit of Prince of Wales (later King Edward VII). The building, designed by architect George Wiltet (1914), combined various architectural styles.



The General Post Office at Mumbai (just behind the Victoria Terminus) is an architectural marvel. Its dome is similar to that of GoI Gumbaz in Bijapur.



Victoria Terminus



The Gateway of India



Prince of Wales Museum

Chennai

In the 20th Century, the British constructed a vast and beautiful Marina Beach and some great buildings. They have become landmarks in Chennai.

Fort St. George, is one of the earliest British buildings in India and built in 1639. Today, it houses the Tamil Nadu Legislative Assembly and the Secretariat.

The High Court is one of the largest judicial complexes in the world and built in 1892.

At the southern end of the Marina Drive is the St. Thomas Cathedral Basilica. The beautiful stained glass window of the basilica portrays the story of St. Thomas.

Other buildings in Chennai belonging to the British period are the Presidency College, Southern Railway headquarters and Chennai Central Station.



Fort St. George



St. Thomas Cathedral

Word Treasure

- renaissance* : the revival of art and literature under the influence of classical models in the 14th -16th centuries
- prose* : ordinary speech or writing without metrical structure
- romanticism* : it emphasizes the power of feeling and the individual imagination
- imperialism* : a policy of extending a country's power and influence through diplomacy
- neo-classical* : a revival of classical aesthetics and forms characterized by the ideals of reason
- commemorate* : recall and show respect for someone or something



Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. Who translated Rig Veda into English?
- i) James Princep ii) Ajneya
- iii) Max Mueller iv) Ruskin Bond
- b. Who received the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1913.?
- i) Munshi Premchand ii) Rabindranath Tagore
- iii) Mahammad Iqbal iv) Yashpal
- c. Who wrote Pather Panchali
- i) Bibhuti Bhushan Bandopadhyay
- ii) Sarat Chandra Chattopadhyay
- iii) Tara Shankar Chattopadhyay
- iv) Manik Bandopadhyay
- d. Mahatma Gandhi was associated with
- i) Indian Mirror ii) Voice of India
- iii) Young India iv) Hindu
- e. Who among the following does not belong to the Bengal School of Art?
- i) Amrita Shergil ii) Ramkinkar Bajaj
- iii) Binod Behari Mukherjee iv) Jamini Roy
- f. Which one of these was recognized as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2004?
- i) Gateway of India ii) Victoria Terminus
- iii) Ajanta Caves iv) Prince of Wales Museum

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. When and where the first printing press was established?
- b. Name some important newspapers of the 19th century.
- c. Who was James Prinsep?
- d. What do you know about Gateway of India? Write in few lines.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. Name the European scholars who began the renewal of interest in India's ancient culture?
- b. What were the developments that took place in Indian literature with the influence of modern ideas?
- c. What was special about the Bengal School of Art? Who were the prominent figures associated with the Bengal School of Art?
- d. How did the development of the press awaken nationalism in the Indians?





How did the Europeans have an impact on Indian architecture? Describe any monument built by the British.

4. Fill in the blanks.

- English education made the Indians acquainted with modern trends in and
- started the Royal Asiatic Society in Bengal.
- translated Rig Veda in English.
- The Visva Bharati University is located at in
- in Mumbai has been declared as a heritage site by UNESCO.

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- William Jones translated the Rig Veda into English.
- Max Mueller was a German scholar.
- Maila Anchal was written by famous novelist Yashpal.
- The proper growth of art education in India began with the setting up the Calcutta School of Industrial Art in 1864.

6. Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. Jamini Roy | i) 1784 |
| b. Indian Mirror | ii) Noble Prize |
| c. Asiatic Society of Bengal | iii) UNESCO |
| d. World Heritage Site | iv) Bengal School of Art |
| e. Geetanjali | v) Newspaper |

7. Why are they still remembered?

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| a. Havell | b. Nanda Lal Bose |
| c. Munshi Premchand | d. Max Mueller |
| e. Dinabandhu Mitra | |



Value Based Questions

- What led to the emergence of art school in India?
- How did the western style art education begin in India?

Activity Zone

- Suppose you are journalist in 20th century. Write a report on the progress made in the field of Literature before independence of India.
- Make a list of the historical buildings or monuments in your city.





The Nationalist Movement (1885-1918)



Key Highlights

- ❖ Rise of Indian Nationalism
- ❖ The Indian National Congress
- ❖ The Moderate Phase
- ❖ Rise of Extremism
- ❖ The partition of Bengal
- ❖ The Swadeshi Movement
- ❖ Splint in the Congress
- ❖ Morley-minto Reforms
- ❖ The Revolutionaries
- ❖ Rise of the Muslim League
- ❖ The first World war and the Indian National Movement
- ❖ The Lucknow Pact

Let's Start With

HISTORY



Although the British succeeded in suppressing the 1857 Revolt, they could not stop the growth of political awareness in India. History of the Indian National Movement led by Indian National Congress (INC) can be divided into Moderate Phase (1885-1905), Radical Phase (1905-1918) and Gandhian Phase (1918-1947). INC was founded in December 1885 under the guidance of Mahatma Gandhi. It was one of the visible embodiment of national awakening in the country. Its founder was an Englishman, Allan Octavian Hume, a retired member of the Indian Civil Service. The Indian leaders, who cooperated with Hume in launching the congress were patriots of high character.



RISE OF INDIAN NATIONALISM

It is important not to confuse nationalism with patriotism. Patriotism is a healthy pride in your country that brings about feelings of loyalty and a desire to help other citizens. Nationalism is an identity that is shared by people who live together and are bound by a common culture, history, and aspirations. This common identity was the beginning of an organized national movement in India. People started thinking beyond regional boundaries and felt part of a nation. It unified every part of the country and inspired fervor in every Indian.

Let's Think

Who was the first president of the Indian National Congress?

Causes for the Rise of Indian Nationalism

- After the Revolt of 1857, India was brought under the direct administration of the British Crown. Indians were not happy under British rule. There was economic exploitation of almost all the sections of the population.
- Peasants and artisans were burdened with taxes. British revenue policies, destroyed indigenous industries. The influx of foreign goods ruined many artisans. There were discriminatory trade policies and large-scale unemployment.
- The modern education was introduced by the British with a view to create an educated class who would help them in administrative work. However, with the spread of modern education and thought, a large number of Indians imbibed a modern, national, secular, democratic and political outlook. In other countries, revolutionary and nationalist movements became sources of inspiration for them. To the spread of modern ideas English language became a medium of communication amongst the educated people in different parts of India.
- Educated Indians were discriminated against. The spread of Western education had given them a democratic and nationalist perspective. It made them conscious of their rights and the ideas of freedom and liberty. English acted as a unifying force and a means of communication between them.
- Widespread poverty added to the people's discontent. The Britishers' need for cash made them force Indian farmers to plant cash crops, as a result of which food production declined. There were frequent famines, in which thousands died.
- Newspapers in English and Indian languages voiced the aspirations of the people and became powerful instruments of spreading national consciousness. Newspapers such as *The Hindu*, *Patriot*, *Amrit*, *Bazar Patrika*, *Kesari* and *Maratha* advocated ideas of nationalism.
- Under the British rule, almost the entire country was united as one political unit. Though the British achieved this for their



Fact File

First Indian National Congress meeting was held at Gokuldas Tejpal Sanskrit College in Mumbai.



own benefit, it was an important development as it led to the political unification of the country. Laws were made uniform and, in theory at least, applied to everyone equally. People in different parts of the country began to consider themselves as one, which helped in promoting nationalism.

- The British rule promoted the attitude of racial hatred and racial arrogance towards Indians. The British considered themselves superior to the Indians and followed a policy of racial discrimination. Railway compartments were reserved for Europeans; Indians were not allowed to enter restaurants and parks. Moreover, the British also subjected Indians to verbal abuse and humiliation. Resentment against this degradation contributed to the growth of patriotism.

National consciousness grew with the help of some other factors as follows :

- The **ICS**, which ran the administration of the country, consisted mostly of Englishmen. Indians could appear for the competitive exams, but found it very difficult to get selected. The exams were held in England and few could afford to take them.
- **The Vernacular Press Act** of 1878 imposed severe censorship on the Indian press, newspapers and journals.
- **The Arms Act** of 1879 forbade Indians to possess arms.
- In 1883, Lord Ilbert passed a controversial bill (called the Ilbert Bill) which had a provision that gave Indian judges the power to try legal cases involving Europeans. The British community protested vehemently against the bill and the government was forced to withdraw the bill.

Starting with the demand for small concessions, the nationalist movement became a movement for complete independence of India.

THE INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS

Before the foundation of Indian National Congress in 1885, many political associations were formed in various parts of the country. These were the **Indian Association** founded by Surendranath Banerjee in 1851, the **Bombay Association** (1852), **Madras Native Association** (1852) founded by G Subramania Iyer and Ananda Charlu, **Poona Sarvajanik Sabha** (1870) founded by Justice Ranade and the **Bombay Presidency Association** (1885) established by Pherozeshah Mehta and Badruddin Tyabji.

However, these organizations had a localized and limited participation. Soon, the need was felt for an all-India political organization. The credit for giving a concrete and final shape to this political organization goes to a retired English Civil Servant, A. O. Hume. Due to his efforts and with the support of Indian leaders such as Dadabhai Naoroji, Pherozeshah Mehta, Surendranath Banerjee, Badruddin Tyabji and W. C. Bonnerjee, the Indian National Congress was founded in December 1885. Its first session, held at



Mumbai, was presided over by W. C. Bonnerjee. Seventy-two delegates from all over India attended it.

The chief aims of the Indian National Congress were :

1. To promote and consolidate the feeling of national unity
2. To formulate and present popular demands before the government
3. To bring together leaders from different parts of the country
4. To remove racial, religious and caste prejudices
5. To create public opinion in the country.

EARLY SESSIONS OF THE CONGRESS

In the different parts of the country, the Indian National Congress held its annual session every year. The second session was held at Calcutta, presided over by Dadabhai Naoroji.

Badruddin Tyabji was elected the President of the third session, held at Chennai. George Yule presided over the fourth session, which was held at Lucknow. The British initially supported the activities of the Congress, considering it a safety valve. The Viceroy, Lord Dufferin considered the Congress as a link between the British and the people of India.

Let's Think

Why did the British consider the Indian National Congress a safety valve?

THE MODERATE PHASE

During the first twenty years of its inception the congress was completely controlled by the liberal leaders known as the Moderates. The period from 1885-1905 is considered to be the **Moderate** phase of Congress. The leaders had modest demands and adopted peaceful methods of petition and prayer to put forward their demands in front of the British. The main demands of the leaders were :

1. Elected representatives in the provincial and central legislative councils
2. Recruit Indians for high government posts and holding the Indian Civil Service examinations in India and not in London
3. Reduction of military expenditure
4. Changes in government's economic policies to encourage growth of Indian industries
5. Promoting the spread of education
6. Amendment of the Arms Act. In this Act of 1878, Indians were prohibited from possessing any arms without license. But this law was not applicable to the British in India.

Methods of the Moderates

Though the Moderates made a humble but correct beginning. They essentially had faith in the British government. They used peaceful and constitutional methods to voice their



demands through the **press**, **persuasion** and **petitions**. Their aim was to rouse the British conscience into accepting the demands. Deputations were also sent to England to create awareness about the demands.

Initially, the British encouraged activities of the Congress. They felt that an organization like this would help them get an insight into the attitude of the Indians. But gradually, they became suspicious of the Congress and stayed aloof. The reasonable methods followed by the early leaders of the Congress had a limited impact on the British.

However, the contribution of the moderates to the Indian National Movement cannot be denied. They generated public opinion against the British and helped in the development of national consciousness throughout the country.

RISE OF EXTREMISM

In the end of the 19th century, a growing trend of **aggressive nationalism** was gaining strength. The leaders advocating this trend, such as Lala Lajpat Rai, Bipin Chandra Pal, Bal Gangadhar Tilak, discarded the policy of the Moderates. They strongly promoted radical ways to express their opinions and demands.

Reasons for the Rise of Extremists

1. The unsympathetic attitude of the British and the failure of the Moderates to achieve anything concrete led to the belief that their methods would not bear fruit.
2. Several events around the world also led to the rise of the extremists. The victory of Ethiopia over Italy in 1896 and the victory of Japan over Russia in 1904-1905 inspired the Indian national leaders to believe that a group of dedicated and committed people could challenge the power of imperialistic countries. There were revolutionary movements in China, Turkey and Egypt too which convinced them further.

The Partition of Bengal

In 1903, the partition of Bengal was the most important event during the rule of Lord Curzon, the Viceroy of Bengal. It was the largest province of British India comprising Bihar and parts of Orissa (now Odisha). The reason given for the division was that Bengal was a very large province and the division was for better administration. The British, however, had political reasons for their decision. There was a powerful wave of nationalism in Bengal which they wanted to curb. East Bengal (which is now Bangladesh) had a Muslim majority while West Bengal had predominantly Hindu majority. The partition was meant to disrupt Hindu-Muslim unity and make the national movement weak.

The people of Bengal did not accept it, they strongly reacted to the proposal of partition. Meetings and rallies were held all over Bengal. There was widespread opposition and



protests everywhere. There were rallies and demonstrations and a day of national mourning was declared. A new province of East Bengal came into existence with Dhaka as the capital in October 1905.



Fact File

Rabindranath Tagore led the protest movement against the partition of Bengal. On the day of the partition, people throughout Bengal tied 'rakhi' on each other's wrist to show their solidarity and brotherhood.

THE SWADESHI MOVEMENT

Swadeshi Movement was officially proclaimed on August 7, 1905 at the Calcutta Town Hall, in Bengal. *Boycott Movement* was also launched along with the Swadeshi Movement. These movements were two powerful weapons of the extremists. *Swadeshi*, literally meaning 'of one's own country', and was aimed at promoting indigenous industries by boycotting the use of British goods. The movements were aimed at promoting patriotism. People were asked to abstain from buying foreign products. Huge bonfires were organized to destroy British-made products. Students persuaded shopkeepers not to sell British products. People also boycotted schools and colleges. The *Swadeshi* movement spread like wildfire. Bal Gangadhar Tilak encouraged Swadeshi and Boycott movements after the British government decided the partition of Bengal.

SPLIT IN THE CONGRESS

In 1905, the Banaras session of the Congress was held and presided over by Gopal Krishna Gokhale. The Congress pledged full support to the Swadeshi movement. But the moderate leaders criticized the movement. Thus, difference of opinion among the Congress leaders became very obvious.

In 1906, at the Calcutta session of the Congress Dadabhai Naoroji declared **self-rule** or **Swaraj** as the ultimate goal of the Congress. At this session the new flag of India was unfurled. The Congress also passed resolutions on the **Swadeshi** and **Boycott** movements and national education.

The Moderates and Extremists differed on many issues. For the Extremists, *Swaraj* meant independence from British domination. The Moderates wanted more participation of Indians in the administration. In 1907, at the Surat session, Congress formally split into the Moderates and Extremists. The Moderates retained control of the Congress party.

MORLEY-MINTO REFORMS

The British tried to appease the Moderates by announcing certain political concessions. In 1909, an act was passed based on the suggestion of the Viceroy Lord Minto and the



Secretary of State for India, Morley. This act was known as Morley-Minto Reforms or the Indian Councils Act of 1909. It was instituted to placate the Moderate.

The act had the following features :

1. An Indian member, S. P. Sinha, was accepted into the Viceroy's Executive Council.
2. It increased the number of elected members in the Central and Provincial Legislative Councils. However, these members were to be elected by landlords, industrialists, businessmen, universities and local bodies.
3. The powers of the members of the Provincial Councils remained advisory.
4. The act introduced the system of separate electorates for Hindu and Muslim voters. They were to elect leaders from their own communities. This was introduced to create a communal divide.

The Moderates realized that the decision for separate electorates was a measure to divide and rule the Indians. They gradually alienated themselves from the government.



Fact File

Khudiram Bose was a Bengali revolutionary. At the time of his hanging, he was only 18 years old.



THE REVOLUTIONARIES

There was a group of people, apart from the Moderates and Extremists, which believed in the use of violence and force out British from the country. These people organized secret societies and used firearms and explosives. Most of these societies were located in Maharashtra and Bengal. There were two important societies **Abhinava Bharat Society** in Maharashtra and **Anushilan Samiti** in Bengal that used violent measures and were involved in the killing of several British officers.

Some other revolutionaries were also arrested during this period, most notable being Aurobindo Ghosh. After being released, he gave up all political activities and opened his ashram at Pondicherry (now Puducherry).

Many of the revolutionaries left India and went abroad to places like Europe, Canada, and the USA, where they set up secret organizations. Others who canvassed for the cause of India's struggle were Shyamji Krishna Varma, Lala Hardayal and Madam Bhikaji Cama. They tried to gain public opinion in favour of the Indians.

RISE OF THE MUSLIM LEAGUE

The unity between Hindus and Muslims was the greatest threat to the British. They had experienced this during the uprising of 1857. The 'divide and rule' policy of the British was successful to some extent as some Muslims leaders stayed away from the Congress, considering it a 'Hindu' organization. Muslim leaders were encouraged by the British to form organizations. The Muslim as a community were now favoured by the government



so that they would back out from the demand for freedom. In 1906 Agha Khan and Nawab Salimullah met Viceroy Lord Minto for permission to start a separate organization. The All India Muslim League was founded to promote the interests of the Muslim community.



Fact File

Muslim league was formed under the leadership of Agha Khan, the Nawab of Dhaka and Nawab Mohsin-ul-Mulk to the nation to safeguard the rights of Indian Muslims.

The main demands of League were:

1. To protect and advance the political rights and interests of the Muslims
2. To ensure that the Muslims do not develop hostility towards the British
3. To promote loyalty to the British government
4. To demand separate electorates for their community.

Factors promoting the Muslim League

The British plan

Dividing Indians on communal lines and adhered separatist attitude in Indian Politics.

Lack of Education

Muslims were isolated from western and technical education.

Loss Sovereignty by Muslims

1857 Revolt made the British think that Muslims are dangerous for their Colonial Policy. As they established their rule after dethroning the Mughal rule.

Expression of Religions Colour

Most of the historians and radical nationalists glorified India's one side of composite culture.

Economic Backwardness of India

Lack of industrialization caused acute unemployment. British attitude towards the cottage industry was pathetic.

THE FIRST WORLD WAR AND THE INDIAN NATIONAL MOVEMENT

The First World War began in 1914 and the British used Indian resources and soldiers to fight the war. The Indian leaders hoped that if they extended support to the British during the War their demands would be granted after the War was over. Meanwhile, the **Home Rule Movement** began in India, led by Bal Gangadhar Tilak, with the objective of achieving self governance. Annie Besant, who had been a pioneering figure of the



Theosophical Society, also joined the movement. The Home Rule Movement spread all over India demanding self-governance.

THE LUCKNOW PACT

There were two important developments at the Lucknow session of the Congress. The British came into conflict with Turkey in the First World War. As the Sultan of Turkey was considered head of the Muslim world, the Muslims were annoyed with the British. In 1916 at the Lucknow session of the Congress, the Muslim League and Congress united and decided to fight for Swaraj together. In the same session, the Moderates and Extremists also realigned after nine years. Thus, Indian National Movement entered a new phase.

In face of Indian National Movement gaining strength, the British Secretary of State announced in 1917 that their aim was to gradually develop **self-governing institutions**. This created great enthusiasm among the Indians. By the end of 1918, the new phase of the Indian National Movement became a mass movement. There were many factors responsible for this, the most prominent being the arrival of Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi into the political scene.



Annie Besant

Word Treasure

1. *Persuasion*- convincing
2. *Petition*- a formal written request
3. *Sovereign*- The capacity to act independently without outside interference
4. *Aggressive Nationalism*- the feeling of superiority about one's own country in comparison to other countries
5. *Secular*- Treating all religions equal
6. *Censorship*-The suppression of words, and images that are offensive.
7. *Concrete*- Objects which can be seen or touch
8. *Rallies*- A method of demonstrating protest
9. *Mass Movement*-an organized effort by a large number of people, especially those not forming part of the elite of a given society
10. *Hostility*- unfriendly behaviour





Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. Who among the following was not an extremist?
- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Lala Lajpat Rai | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Khudiram Bose | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Bipin Chandra Pal | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Bal Gangadhar Tilak | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. The first session of the Indian National Congress was presided over by
- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Gopal Krishna Gokhale | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Mahatma Gandhi | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) W. C. Bonnerjee | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Jawahar Lal Nehru | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. Morley-Minto Reforms are also known as
- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Government of India Act of 1906 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ii) Government of India Act of 1907 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Indian Councils Act of 1909 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iv) Government of India Act of 1908 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. The Indian Association was founded by
- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| i) Surendranath Banerjea | ii) G. Subramaniya Iyer |
| iii) Ananda Charlu | iv) Pherozeshah Mehta |
- e. The Arms Act of forbade Indians to possess arms.
- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| i) 1878 | ii) 1879 |
| iii) 1877 | iv) 1876 |
- f. All India Muslim League was founded under the leadership of
- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| i) Badruddin Tyabji | ii) Dadabhai Naoroji |
| iii) Nawab Salimullah | iv) Mohammad Iqbal |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- What is the significance of the Surat Session of the Congress?
- Name two nationalist newspapers that awakened the spirit of nationalism.
- Why did the Congress split into Moderates and Extremists?
- Mention two demands of the Muslim League.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Write any three causes for the rise of Indian Nationalism.
- How was the Indian National Congress founded and what were its chief aims?
- Give reasons for the rise of the Extremists.



- d. Why was Bengal partitioned? What was the reaction of the people to this decision?
- e. Who were the Revolutionaries? What were their activities?
- f. What were the demands of the Moderates during the early stages of the Indian National Congress?

4. Tell us why.

- a. Indian leaders extended support to the British during the First World War.
- b. The British tried to appease the Moderates.
- c. People of Bengal strongly reacted to the partition proposal.
- d. Moderates were convinced of the efficacy of the British rule.
- e. The British introduced modern education in India.

5. Why were the following sessions important?

- a. 1885 Congress session in Bombay.
- b. 1906 Congress session in Calcutta.
- c. 1907 Congress session in Surat.
- d. 1916 Congress session in Lucknow.

6. Fill in the blanks.

- a. The Act put severe censorship on the Indian Press.
- b. The Bombay Association was started by
- c. The venue of the first session of the Indian National Congress was at in the year
- d. Lord ordered the partition of Bengal.
- e. By the end of 20th century a growing trend of was gaining strength.

7. Match the following.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| a. Tilak | i) Congress |
| b. Ghadar | ii) One's own country |
| c. Swaraj | iii) Home Rule League |
| d. A. O. Hume | iv) First World War |
| e. Swadesh | v) Paper published by Indians in United States and Canada |
| f. Turkey | vi) Self-rule |



Value Based Questions

Imagine that you are involved in the Indian National Movement. Based on your reading of this chapter, briefly discuss your preferred methods of struggle and your vision of a free India.

Activity Zone

1. Find out about the life and struggle of any participants or leaders of the national movement and write a short essay about them and their struggles.
2. Discuss about the moderators and their struggle against British rule.





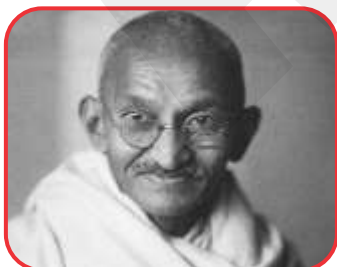
Indian National Movement (1919-1947)



Key Highlights

- ❖ Rise of Mahatma Gandhi
- ❖ Government of India Act, 1919
- ❖ Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (1919)
- ❖ A case Study of Khilafat Movement (1920)
- ❖ Events After the Non-Cooperation Movement
- ❖ Constructive Programme
- ❖ Simon Commission (1927)
- ❖ Re-emergence of Revolutionary Activities
- ❖ Growth of Socialist Ideas
- ❖ Congress Session at Lahore (1929)
- ❖ Civil Disobedience Movement
- ❖ Government of India Act, 1935
- ❖ Two-Nation Theory
- ❖ National Movement and Second World War
- ❖ Cripps Mission
- ❖ Quit India Movement (1942)
- ❖ Subhash Chandra Bose and INA
- ❖ Cabinet Mission Plan (1946)
- ❖ Mountbatten Plan (1947)
- ❖ Indian Independence Act (1947)

Let's Start With



The third and final phase of the Indian National Movement (1919-1947) is known as the Gandhian era. During this Period Mahatma Gandhi become the undisputed leader of the National Movement. His principles of non-violence and Satyagraha were



employed against the British Government. Gandhiji was a social reformer, an economist, a political Philosopher and a seeker of truth. We consider him as a 'yugapurusha', one who inaugurated a new era.

RISE OF MAHATMA GANDHI

The Indian National Movement found a new leader, Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi towards the end of the first World War. The national movement became a mass movement under his leadership and people from all walks of life participated in it. Because of his enormous influence on the people, Rabindranath Tagore called him the 'Mahatma'.

Early Life of Gandhi

Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi was born on 2nd October 1869, at Porbandar in Gujarat. His father was the *Diwan* of Porbandar. Mohandas left for England in 1888 to study law. After completing his studies he went to Natal, in South Africa, to work in a law firm. It was here that his political ideologies gained a definite shape.

Gandhiji faced severe racial discrimination like many other Indians in South Africa. He was thrown off a train as he refused to move from the first class to a third class coach while holding a valid first class ticket. These events inspired him to fight against injustice and discrimination.

In 1894, **Natal Indian Congress** was founded by Gandhiji, which organized the Indian community of South Africa into a homogeneous political force and helped Indians in voicing their grievances against British discrimination. Satyagraha, a novel method of mass agitation was also developed by Gandhiji.

Satyagraha is also known as non-violent resistance policy of Gandhiji. To oppose the wrong without hurting the oppressor was the essence of his *Satyagraha*.

Even while resisting evil, he would express compassion for the evil doer. To him, a true *Satyagrahi* would not show any signs of hatred and must undergo necessary training to have the discipline to perform *Satyagraha*. As Gandhiji emerged as the leader of the Indian freedom struggle, *Satyagraha* became one of the salient feature.



Sabarmati Ashram in Ahmedabad

Champaran Satyagraha

A new phase in the Indian National Movement began when Gandhiji returned to India in 1915. Peasants in Champaran, Bihar, were facing the tyranny of indigo planters in 1917. Gandhiji went to Champaran, defied British orders and refused to leave till the British were forced to withdraw the excessive tax imposed on the peasants.



Gandhiji in South Africa



Gandhiji led the protesting textile workers of Ahmedabad in 1918, who demanded a raise in wages. He supported the peasants in Kheda, Gujarat, who were demanding suspension of revenue tax. With a large following, he soon became a mass leader.

IN THE FIRST WORLD WAR, GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, 1919

In the First World War, the Indian leaders had supported the British hoping that their demand would be met after the War was over.

The British passed the Government of India Act in 1919 to pacify the demands of the Congress. It was also known as the **Montague Chelmsford Reforms** as the act was formulated by the Secretary of State for India, Montague and the Indian Viceroy, Lord Chelmsford. In the central and provincial legislatures the act introduced a number of changes.

1. The Central Legislature was replaced by two houses—the Imperial Legislative Assembly and the Council of State.
2. Members of the Executive Council were not responsible to the legislature.
3. The Act introduced Dual Government or dyarchy in provincial administration. The subjects under the jurisdiction of the provinces were divided into two lists—**reserved** and **transferred**.
4. Under dyarchy, important departments, such as finance and police remained under the control of Governor, while public departments, such as education and public health were given to ministers responsible to legislature.
5. The Provincial Legislative Councils were enlarged. The majority of their members were to be elected.
6. More powers were given to the provincial governments.



Gandhiji in Kheda

Rowlatt Act (1919)

The Government of India Act failed to satisfy the demands of Indians. Large-scale protest meetings were held all over the country. Alarmed, the British government passed the



Fact File

- ❖ Rabindranath Tagore declined the Knighthood conferred on him by the British in protest against the Jallianwala Bagh massacre.
- ❖ The Lieutenant Governor of Punjab from 1912 to 1919, Michael O'Dwyer, endorsed General Dyer and called the massacre of Jallianwala Bagh "correct" action. O'Dwyer was assassinated in London in 1940 for his role by revolutionary Udham Singh.



Rowlatt Act in 1919, which authorised the government to imprison any person without trial. The act was widely criticized as it aimed at the suppression of freedom fighters who were hunted down, imprisoned, or hanged.

JALLIANWALA BAGH MASSACRE (1919)

Opposing the Rowlatt Act, *Hartals* and protest meetings were held all over the country. On 6th of April, 1919, Gandhiji was arrested followed by arrests of Dr Satya Pal and Dr Saifuddin Kitchlew in Punjab.

A peaceful public meeting was held at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar on 13 April 1919, on Baisakhi, to protest against the arrests of Dr Satya pal and Dr Kitchlew. A group of British soldiers, led by General Dyer, blocked the only exit of the park and opened fire without any warning on the helpless mans. Women and children gathered there, Thousands perished and many more were injured. The Jallianwala Bagh incident created a nation-wide distrust towards the British. Unrepentant Dyer defended his action by terming it necessary 'to teach a moral lesson to Punjab.' The violent reaction of the people compelled the British to hold an enquiry into the incident. The enquiry, conducted by Hunter Commission, justified the firing but Dyer was not forgiven by Indians for his brutal act.

A Case Study of Khilafat Movement (1920)

After the First World war , a movement to protect the Ottam Empire (Turkey) was launched in 1919, Which was on the verge of disintegration. The Sultan or the Caliph of Turkey positions as the religious head of the Muslim world, was threatened as Britain partitioned the Ottoman Empire. The Ali brothers, Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali launched the Khilafat movement in 1920 to pressurize the British to protect the Caliph. Leaders such as Maulana Abul Kalam Azad and Harat Mohini also joined the movement. As Gandhiji perceived this movement as an opportunity to unite the Hindus and Muslims. So he also supported the movement.

Between the Indian National Congress and Khilafat leaders, an alliance was made in 1920. It was decided by the leaders of both groups to launch a Non-cooperation Movement against the British rule, under the leadership of Gandhiji as the Indian Muslims had now developed an aggressive anti-British attitude. The Khilafat Movement also brought about Hindu-Muslim unity.

Non-cooperation Movement (1920)

Gandhiji launched a non-violent, Non-cooperation Movement in September 1920, at the Calcutta session, urging Indians not to cooperate with the British and defined Swaraj as the ultimate aim. The aims of the movement were as follows :

- To redress the wrongs done to Punjab and Turkey.
- To attain Swaraj for the people of India by all legitimate and peaceful means.



Methods of Non-cooperation

The Non-cooperation Movement aimed to disrupt normal life and bring the British administration to a standstill.

- It was to proceed in stages, beginning with the renunciation of titles which Indians had received from the British. Gandhiji returned his Kaiser-I- Hind medal while Rabindranath Tagore and Subramania Iyer had already returned their titles.
- Students were asked to boycott educational institutes run by the British. Indigenous institutions such as Jamia Millia Islamia and Kashi Vidyapeeth were set up.
- People were asked to boycott foreign goods. Huge bonfires were lit to burn foreign goods. Gandhiji advocated the spinning and wearing of khadi while boycotting British-made clothes.
- People refused to cast their votes for elections to elect representatives to the legislature. Lawyers boycotted courts. Strikes and hartals took place all over the country.
- A campaign for non-payment of taxes was to start at the last stage of the movement. Bardoli in Gujarat was chosen as the first state where taxes would not be paid
- Indians refused to serve in the British army and in government jobs.

The movement gained great success. While schools and colleges were deserted, the British government continued with repressive measures and arrested almost 30,000 people. In its Ahmedabad session held in 1921 under Hakim Ajmal Khan, the Congress decided to continue the movement until the Punjab and Khilafat grievances were redressed and Swaraj was attained. Gandhiji emphasized that the entire movement should remain peaceful. However, the movement failed to remain non-violent.

In Malabar, Kerala, an armed uprising against the British broke out when the Muslim peasants of the Moplah community revolted. This movement took a communalist turn as the clash was mainly between the Muslim peasants and Hindu landlords. Thousands of people were killed and inter-communal harmony was considerably weakened.

Chauri Chaura incident (1922)

On 5th February, 1922 a violent incident at Chauri Chaura, Gorakhpur made Gandhiji call off the Non-cooperation Movement. The police stationed at Chauri Chaura fired at a group of demonstrators. The demonstrators retaliated by burning down the police station, causing the death of twenty-two English policemen. Gandhiji



wanted the movement to be non-violent, so it was called off in the wake of this violence. On 10th March, 1922, Gandhiji was arrested and sentenced to six years' imprisonment.

On 12th of February, 1922, the Working Committee of the Congress met on 12th of February, 1922 and decided to concentrate on popularising charkha, promoting Hindu-Muslim unity and combating untouchability.

Let's Think

How Gandhiji was justified in withdrawing the Non-cooperation Movement?

EVENTS AFTER THE NON—COOPERATION MOVEMENT

Swaraj Party

Gandhiji's decision to withdraw the Non-cooperation Movement disappointed the Congress leaders. Chittaranjan Das and Motilal Nehru formed the **Swaraj Party** in January 1923, along with prominent leaders such as Huseyn Shaheed Suhrawardy of Bengal, Vithalbhai Patel and other Congress leaders who were dissatisfied with the Congress. Chittaranjan Das, Narasimha Chintaman Kelkar and Motilal Nehru formed the Congress-Khilafat Swarajaya Party in December 1922, along with other Congress leaders who were dissatisfied with the Congress. The 'No-changers', was the other group who accepted Gandhi's decision to withdraw the movement.



C.R. Das was a prominent leader of the National Movement from Bengal. He was popularly known as 'Deshbandhu'.

Both the Swarajists and the No-changers were engaged in a political struggle, but both were determined to avoid a repetition of the 1907 split at Surat. Gandhiji advised the two groups to remain in the Congress but to work in separate ways. Chittaranjan Das died in 1925, and Motilal Nehru returned to the Congress the following year, and the Swaraj Party was greatly weakened.

THE CONSTRUCTIVE PROGRAMME

In 1924, Gandhiji was released from prison. He was involved in the **Constructive Programme** adopted by some Congress leaders like Vallabhbhai Patel, Rajendra Prasad and C. Rajagopalachari.

Gandhiji, along with his political activities, also initiated schemes which would bring about social good and benefit to the millions of poor people.

Gandhiji's Constructive Programme included sustainable development, formation of local self-government, development of cottage industries, popularization of *khadi* and universal primary education. Gandhiji made it compulsory for all members of the Congress Committee to spin 2000 yards of yarn every month. He believed that spinning *khadi* would make the poor self-reliant and give them self-respect. An **All India**



Spinners' Association was set up and **Khadi Bhandars** were set up in different parts of the country. He campaigned against the practice of untouchability and called the untouchables Harijans.

THE SIMON COMMISSION (1927)

The Simon Commission led by Sir John Simon who came to India in 1927 to study the working of the Government of India Act 1919. The Commission was a group of seven British Members of Parliament, it did not include a single Indian member. The Indian National Congress, at its December 1927 session in Chennai, resolved to boycott the commission. A fraction of the Muslim League, led by Muhammad Ali Jinnah, also decided to boycott the Commission.

There was a nationwide strike when the Commission arrived in India on 3rd of February, 1928. Protestors greeted the commission with black flags and placards of 'Go Back Simon'.

In Punjab, police lathi-charged an anti-Simon Commission procession led by Lala Lajpat Rai. Lalaji succumbed to the fatal blows he received. The Commission published its report in 1930. It proposed the abolition of dyarchy and the establishment of representative government in the provinces.

Nehru Report

In 1928 the attempt at drafting a constitution by the Indians was done by Motilal Nehru and Tej Bahadur Sapru. Nehru Report demanded a **Dominion Status** for India. But the Muslim League rejected the report. Thus, the demand for complete independence became more pronounced.

RE-EMERGENCE OF REVOLUTIONARY ACTIVITIES

The frustration among the people was caused by the suspension of Non-cooperation Movement. This Movement led to the revival of revolutionary activities. New revolutionary organizations were set up, which advocated radical protest methods like murder of officials and establishment of factories to produce bombs on a large scale.

In 1924, at Kanpur a conference was held which was attended by revolutionaries from all over the country. Ram Prasad Bismil, Jogesh Chatterjee and Sachindranath Sanyal founded the **Hindustan Republican Association**. Its aim was to organize armed resistance against foreign rule and to set up a republic based on adult franchise. The party needed money to carry on its activities so it resorted to various means. A train to Lucknow carrying government treasury was looted at Kakori. on 9th of August, 1925, This was the famous **Kakori Conspiracy Case**. The whole plot was unearthed and many revolutionaries were arrested and tried. Ram Prasad Bismil, Roshan Singh,



Ashfaqullah Khan and Rajendra Lahiri were sentenced to death and others to long terms of imprisonment. Chandra Shekhar Azad, who belonged to the **Hindustan Republican Association**, escaped arrest. He later shot himself dead in Allahabad during an encounter with the police.

A police officer named Saunders was assassinated in December 1928. He was believed to be responsible for the death of Lala Lajpat Rai who had died of wounds received during a procession against the Simon Commission. On 8th of April, 1929, Bhagat Singh and Batukeshwar Dutt threw a bomb in the Central Legislative Assembly and raised slogans of *Inquilab Zindabad*.

Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev and Rajguru were tried and later hanged. The whole nation mourned their loss.

Jatin Das, another revolutionary, went on a fast unto death to protest against the ill-treatment meted out to the prisoners. He died after 63 days of hunger strike. His heroism and bravery inspired many others.

The most daring of revolutionary activities in India was perhaps the attack on the armoury at Chittagong by Surya Sen on 18th of April, 1930. Surya Sen was arrested in 1933 and sentenced to death.

In the early 1920, Revolutionary activities continued unabated. The government ruthlessly suppressed these activities. Gradually, with the death of prominent leaders, the revolutionary movement lost its force. Many leaders were drawn to the ideas of socialism. Several were imprisoned in the cellular jail in Andaman. On their release, they devoted themselves to peasants' and workers' movements. Some joined the Congress and the Communist Party and played an important role in the freedom struggle.

Let's Think

Why was the Civil Disobedience Movement started?

GROWTH OF SOCIALIST IDEAS

In India, the success of the Russian Revolution popularized socialist ideas. The Communist Party of India was formed in 1925. Young leaders of Congress such as Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose began propounding socialist ideas.

Jawaharlal Nehru was the son of prominent Congress leader Motilal Nehru. He joined the Indian National Movement after completing his studies in England. He was highly influenced by Gandhiji's ideologies.

Congress Session at Lahore (1929)

In December 1929, at Lahore the Congress session was held with Jawaharlal Nehru as the President. The Congress declared the attainment of complete independence or Purna Swaraj as its aim. It decided to launch a Civil Disobedience Movement under Gandhiji. 26th of January, 1930 was celebrated as Independence Day. Meetings were held all over India and the Congress tricolour was hoisted.



CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT

Dandi March (1930)

The British government had a monopoly on salt production and had imposed a tax on salt, an essential commodity for rich and poor alike. Mahatma Gandhi, along with 78 volunteers, began his famous **Dandi March** on 12th of March 1930. Gandhiji and his followers covered on foot a distance of 375 km in 24 days from Sabarmati Ashram to the coastal town of Dandi. He reached Dandi on April 6 and violated the law by making salt.



Gandhiji at Dandi

This was the beginning of the **Civil Disobedience Movement**. Soon, it became a mass movement. Thousands of people defied the salt law, foreign cloth was boycotted and liquor shops were picketed. Peasants refused to pay revenue taxes and even foresters defied forest laws. The famous poetess Sarojini Naidu led a march of the Satyagrahis to government-owned salt depots.

In the northwest part of India, Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan, popularly known as **Frontier Gandhi**, formed a powerful non-violent movement called **Khudai Khidmatgar**. He was totally against the partition of India. Rani Gaidinliu led the movement in the Northeast. C. Rajagopalachari led the salt *Satyagraha* in the south India.

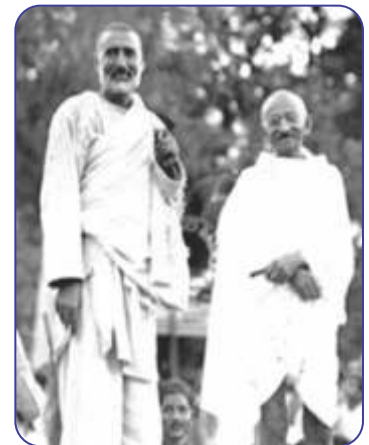
The British government used repressive measures to crush the movement. *Satyagrahis* were imprisoned in large numbers. The Congress was declared illegal and major Congress leaders were put behind bars.

In 1930, to discuss the Simon Commission report the First Round Table Conference was organized by the British government.

Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931)

In such a volatile situation, the British decided to negotiate with Gandhiji. In 1931, a political agreement was signed between Mahatma Gandhi and the Viceroy of India, Lord Irwin. The **Gandhi-Irwin Pact**, spelt out certain specific action points, to be initiated by the colonial Government of India as well as the Indian National Congress. These included :

- Discontinuation of the Civil Disobedience Movement by the Indian National Congress
- Participation by the Indian National Congress in the Round Table Conference
- Release of prisoners arrested for participating in the Civil Disobedience Movement



Gandhiji at Dandi

- The removal of the tax on salt. Indians were now allowed to produce, trade and sell salt legally and for their own private use.

The Karachi Session of Congress, 1931

The Congress session was held at Karachi in 1931. The decisions were taken on this occasion were as follows :

1. Gandhi-Irwin Pact was approved.
2. A resolution on Fundamental Rights and economical policy was passed.
3. A plan for the reconstruction of Indian society after independence was outlined.

Second Round Table Conference

In 1931, at the Second Round Table Conference in London, Gandhiji represented the Indian National Congress. However, the Conference ended in a failure as the British government focused on rights of the minorities and the princely states, instead of transfer of power. Gandhiji returned to India and re-launched the Civil Disobedience Movement. Soon, he was arrested.



Gandhiji at
Downing Street

Poona Pact

Dr B. R. Ambedkar had been demanding a separate electorate for the untouchables (*Harijans*). Gandhiji strongly opposed this, as he believed it would weaken the national movement and disintegrate the Hindu society. In 1932, the British announced the **Communal Award**, in which separate electorate was granted to the *Harijans*. Gandhiji, imprisoned at Yerawada jail in Pune, went on a hunger strike to oppose the move. Finally, a compromise was reached on 24th of September, 1932, when the Poona Pact was signed. In this pact, it was decided to have seats reserved for the 'depressed classes' out of the general electorate seats in the provincial legislatures. Candidates for these seats would be elected via general elections. In 1932 Gandhiji did not attend the Third Round Table Conference held in London. The Civil Disobedience Movement was called off in 1934.

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA ACT, 1935

In 1935, Government of India Act was passed by the British. The features of the Act were :

- The act suggested the creation of an All India Federation of British Indian Provinces and Indian states.
- The system of **dyarchy** was introduced at the Centre. Reserved subjects such as defence and foreign affairs were to be administered by the Governor-General and the transferred subjects were to be administered by the Governor-General on the advice of ministers who were answerable to the legislature.



- The central legislature was to be bicameral, the two houses being the Council of States and the Federal Assembly.
- Autonomy was granted to the provinces. In the provinces, the Governor could carry out administration with the help of ministers belonging to the majority party in the legislature.
- The Governor also enjoyed special powers, such as full control over the civil service and the police. He could also veto the bills passed by the legislature.

The act was a failure as the provincial autonomy had serious limitations which did not satisfy the demands of the Indians. The federal part of the act was never introduced due to strong opposition from the princely states.

In its 1936 Lucknow session, the Congress rejected the act. However, it agreed to participate in the elections of the provincial assemblies to be held in 1937.

The Congress secured a majority in the elections held in 1937, and formed governments in seven of the eleven provinces of British India. The Muslim League also won a few seats in the Muslim electorate.

TWO-NATION THEORY

The Muslim League was formed in 1906. It was the most prominent communal party. In 1939, when the Congress leaders resigned from the provincial legislatures, the Muslim League celebrated the day as '**day of deliverance**' from Hindu domination. In 1940, at the Lahore session of the Muslim League, Pakistan resolution was passed which adopted Muhammad Ali Jinnah's **two-nation theory**. The Congress rejected the resolution. Jinnah demanded separate state for the Muslims called **Pakistan** as he believed that Muslims being a minority would not get adequate representation in governance. Aiming to weaken the national movement, the British supported this demand.



Fact File

On December 7, 1941, the Imperial Japanese Navy waged a surprise military strike against the United States naval base at Pearl Harbor, in Hawaii. The attack came as a profound shock to the American people and led directly to the American entry into World War II.

A scholar of Islam, Maulana Azad strongly advocated Hindu Muslim unity and believed in the essential oneness of all religions, *Wahadat-i-Deem*. He staunchly opposed Jinnah's two-nation theory.

NATIONAL MOVEMENT AND SECOND WORLD WAR

When the Second World War broke out in 1939, the British declared war on India's behalf, without even consulting Congress. But India's stand this time was very clear. If a



war was fought in the name of freedom and democracy and that very freedom was denied to Indians, India was not going to be associated with it.

Individual Satyagraha was launched in October 1940 by Gandhiji with Vinoba Bhave as the first person to offer *Satyagraha*. Within a short period, about 25,000 *Satyagrahis* were behind bars, including some prominent leaders of the Congress.

CRIPPS MISSION

Sir Stafford Cripps came to India in March 1942 to seek the support of Indian leaders in the Second World War. This is known as the **Cripps Mission**. The mission proposed:

- Dominion status for India after the war was over.
- It gave the provinces and princely states the choice of joining the Indian Union and remaining independent.

Both the Congress and the Muslim League rejected the proposal. Thus, the mission was a failure. Gandhiji called it 'a postdated cheque on a failing bank'.



Cripps and Gandhiji during Cripps Mission, 1942



Netaji as the leader of INA

QUIT INDIA MOVEMENT (1942)

When the Cripps Mission failed, then the Congress decided to launch the third mass movement against the British.

Gandhiji gave the slogan 'Quit India' in August 1942. The All India Congress Committee met on 8th of August, 1942 at Mumbai and passed the 'Quit India' resolution which proposed the starting of a non-violent mass struggle under Gandhiji.

The resolution demanded the immediate end of British rule in India. Gandhiji gave the mantra '**Do or die**'.

The repression by the British continued. On 9th of August, 1942, Gandhiji and other Congress leaders were arrested and the Congress was declared illegal. People reacted violently to this and attacked the vital installations of British authority such as police stations, post offices and railway stations. Telegraph and telephone wires were cut and government buildings were burnt.

The British government went all out to crush the movement. Thousands of people were imprisoned and killed. Protesters were *lathi-charged*. Most leaders of the Congress were imprisoned. In the end, the government succeeded in crushing the movement.

In the history of Indian Freedom struggle, the Quit India Movement was the last major mass movement. It witnessed a large number of women participants. Aruna Asaf Ali, Jay Prakash Narayan and Ram Manohar Lohia organized revolutionary activities.



SUBHASH CHANDRA BOSE AND INA

Subhash Chandra Bose was one of the most dynamic leaders of the Indian freedom struggle. He is more familiar with his name Netaji. He left the Congress due to ideological differences between Gandhiji and him. In 1939, Bose formed the **All India Forward Bloc**.

Bose envisaged an invasion of India with Hitler's help. But Hitler did not show much interest in India's freedom. The **Indian National Army (INA)** or **Azad Hind Fauj** was formed in Southeast Asia in 1942. The INA with the Japanese force advanced towards India via Burma. In May 1944, the army conquered Imphal and Kohirna. Bose gave the slogan 'Dilli Chalo' (March to Delhi). However, with the defeat of Japan in the Second World War, the INA had to abandon all its plans. Casualties and defeat hit the INA. It is believed that Netaji was killed in a plane crash while flying to Tokyo in 1945.

Naval Revolt

The Royal Indian Navy revolted at many places in 1946. About 300 people were killed in Bombay when the British attempted to crush the revolt.

Let's Think

Why do you think the proposal made by Cripps was rejected?

CABINET MISSION PLAN (1946)

In the British government, a sudden change in attitude was seen as the Conservative Party under Winston Churchill lost the elections and the Labour Party under Clement Attlee came to power. Attlee declared that the British would quit India by June 1948.

In May 1945, Viceroy Lord Wavell suggested the **Wavell Plan** to break the political deadlock in India. However, a conference of the prominent leaders of all the major political parties of India, held at Shimla in 1946, was a failure because Jinnah was rigid on the question of Pakistan. In March 1946, Prime Minister of England Attlee sent a Cabinet Mission to India to hold talks with the Indian leaders and settle the terms of the transfer of power. This mission consisted of three cabinet ministers, Lord Pethick Lawrence, Sir Stafford Cripps and A. V. Alexander. They suggested that a constituent assembly should be established to frame the Constitution and form an interim government. It held talks with the Indian leaders and then put forward its own proposal. This is known as the **Cabinet Mission Plan**. Its main features were :

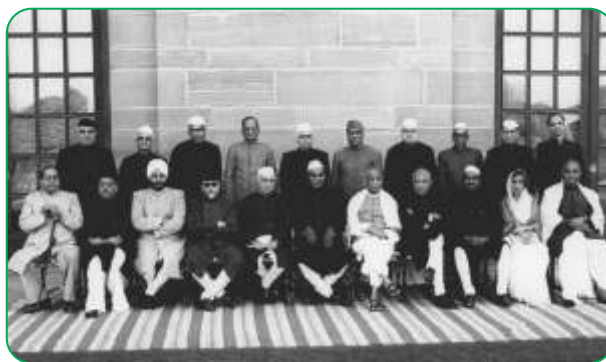


Indian National Army troops at Mount Popa

- The plan proposed greater autonomy to the provinces and the princely states. Only defence and foreign affairs were kept under central control.



- The provinces were granted the right to form a union among themselves.
- The plan also proposed formation of an interim government at the centre to carry on the administration until the Constitution was implemented.
- An assembly consisting of 389 members was to be formed to draft the Constitution of India.



Cabinet of the interim government

While the Congress accepted the plan of an **interim government** at the Centre, it had serious differences with the Muslim League on many issues. As a result, communal riots took place in many parts of the country.

In September 1946, an interim government was formed with Jawaharlal Nehru as the Vice-President. The Muslim League also joined it after some time. But the League continued with its demand for a separate state of Pakistan under the 'two nation theory'. A **Constituent Assembly** was elected in July 1946, in which the Congress won. Dr Rajendra Prasad was elected as the President of the Assembly, which started functioning from 9th December, 1946.

MOUNTBATTEN PLAN (1947)

Lord Mountbatten was appointed the Viceroy of India on March 24, 1947. Amidst a highly volatile situation, he arrived in India and on 3rd of June, 1947, presented a plan for the division of India into two Independent states — the Indian Union and Pakistan. Indian states were given the right to decide their own future. Pakistan consisted of West Punjab, East Bengal (Bangladesh today), Sind and North West Frontier Province.



Fact File

During 1942 the parallel government formed in Tamluk in Bengal, was known as jatiya sarkar. In Satara (Maharashtra) this was known as the patri sarkar.

INDIAN INDEPENDENCE ACT (1947)

The provisions of the Mountbatten Plan were introduced in the British Parliament which was passed as the Indian Independence Act. The details of power transfer amongst the new governments of India and Pakistan were pronounced in this act.

The violent communal riots and the continuous pressure by the Muslim League on Pakistan ultimately made the partition of India unavoidable. India became an independent country on **15th of August, 1947**. The Constituent Assembly, started working as the National Parliament. The members took a pledge to devote themselves to



the service of India and its progress. The Indian tricolour was hoisted on the historic Red Fort and a new chapter began in the history of India.

India's freedom was tainted by violent riots between Hindus and Muslims. Gandhiji toured the riot-affected areas to bring about peace. On 30th of January, 1948, he was shot dead by a Hindu fanatic Nathuram Godse. The whole country was stunned.

Word Treasure

<i>Ideologies</i>	:	a system of ideas, especially on that forms the basis of economic or political theory and policy
<i>dyarchy</i>	:	form of government where responsibilities are shared by two authorities
<i>jurisdiction</i>	:	the official power to make legal decisions and judgements
<i>legitimate</i>	:	confirming to the law or to rules
<i>emphasized</i>	:	give special importance or prominence to something in speaking or writing
<i>communal</i>	:	shared by all members of a community
<i>sustainable</i>	:	able to be maintained at a certain rate or level
<i>assassinated</i>	:	murder in a surprise attack for political or religious reasons
<i>bicameral</i>	:	a legislative body having two branches or chambers
<i>envisaged</i>	:	contemplate or conceive of a possibility or a desirable future event
<i>interim government</i>	:	a government formed to take over office till a properly elected government assumes charge
<i>riots</i>	:	a violent disturbance of the peace by a crowd

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

a. Who was popularly called Deshbandhu?

i) Vallabhbhai Patel

ii) C. Rajagopalachari

iii) Motilal Nehru

iv) C. R. Das

b. Who among the following was not the founder of Hindustan Republican Association?

i) Ram Prasad Bismil

ii) Sachindranath Sanyal

iii) Jogesh Chatterjee

iv) B. K. Dutt



- c. The Second Round Table Conference was held in
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| i) New Delhi | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Moscow | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) London | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Beijing | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. The Lahore Session of the Congress in 1929 was held with as the President.
- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Jawahar Lal Nehru | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Mahatma Gandhi | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Dr Rajendra Prasad | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. Who gave the mantra Do or Die?
- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ii) Bhagat Singh | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Gandhiji | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iv) Sukhdev | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- f. Who gave the two-nation theory?
- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Mian Iftikhar-ud-din | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Muhammad All Jinnah | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) G. V. Mavalankar | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Lord Mountbatten | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- g. Who came to India in March 1942 to seek the support of Indian leaders in the Second World War.
- | | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) A. V. Alexander | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Sir Stafford Cripps | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Lord Pethick Lawrence | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Lord Wavell | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- h. When did the Dandi March begin?
- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| i) March 12, 1930 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) March 10, 1930 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) March 13, 1930 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) March 11, 1930 | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- Describe Gandhiji's Constructive Programme.
- What were the benefits of Gandhiji's Constructive Programme to society?
- What were the methods adopted by the people during the Non-Cooperation Movement?
- What were some of the Points included in the Gandhi-Irwin Pact?
- Define the Khilafat Movement.
- Who led Simon Commission? Why was it boycotted everywhere?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Outline any two activities undertaken by the Revolutionaries.
- Why was the Khilafat movement a turning point in the history of the Indian National Movement?
- What were the changes in the central and provincial legislatures brought by the Government of India Act in 1919?
- Explain the features of Cabinet Mission proposal. Why did the proposal fail?
- Explain the importance of the Dandi March as the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.



4. Fill in the blanks:-

- a. and were arrested under the Rowlatt Act.
- b. Gandhiji's method of mass agitation was called, based on and
- c. The Quit India Movement resolution was passed in the year
- d. The Civil Disobedience Movement started with the
- e. The Non-Cooperation Movement was called off because of the incident.



- 1. How was the moderate phase different from the extremist phase?
- 2. Do you think India could have achieved independence without Gandhiji? How?

5. Write whether the following statements are true or false.

- a. Khadi Bhandars were set up only in Gujarat and Maharashtra.
- b. Nehru Report demanded a dominion status for India.
- c. The Government of India Act, 1919, is also known as Montague-Chelmsford Reforms.
- d. The Gandhi-Irwin Pact was approved at Karachi Session of Congress, 1931.
- e. The Swaraj Party was formed by Vallabhai Patel.
- f. The Hunter Commission severely criticized General Dyer for Jallianwala Bagh Massacre.

6. Write short notes on the following.

- a. Satyagraha
- b. Poona Pact
- c. Rowlatt Act
- d. Day of Deliverance
- e. The Naval Revolt
- f. Chauri chaura Incident

7. Arrange the following events in the order in which they occurred.

- a. Gandhiji went to Champaran defying British orders.
- b. The British announced the Communal Award.
- c. A peaceful public meeting was held at Jallianwala Bagh.
- d. The Congress session was held at Karachi.
- e. Pakistan resolution was passed.



Value Based Questions

- 1. What were the causes of Indian National Movement?
- 2. The revolutionaries of India made way for independence much easier. Do you agree or not?

Activity Zone

Collect pictures of major revolutionary leaders and paste them in your scrap book.





Key Highlights

- ❖ Natural Resources : Types and Development
- ❖ Types of Resources
- ❖ Conservation of Resources
- ❖ Sustainable Development of Resources

Let's Start With

Natural resources are useful raw materials that we get from the Earth. They occur naturally, which means that human cannot make natural resources. Instead, we use and modify natural resources in ways that are beneficial to us. The materials used in human-made objects are natural resources. Ever since the earth was inhabited, humans and other life forms have depended on things that exist freely in nature to survive. These things include water(from seas and fresh water), land, soils, rocks, forests (vegetation), animals (including fish), fossil fuels and minerals. They are called Natural Resources and are the basis of life on earth.

NATURAL RESOURCES: TYPES AND DEVELOPMENT

Anything on earth that is necessary for human survival and satisfies human needs is called a resource. Resources that are drawn from nature and with few modifications are called natural resources. The air we breathe, the water in the rivers and lakes, the soil's minerals are all natural resources. Natural resources are not very useful in raw form. They acquire value when they are processed to meet the day-to-day needs of humans. Soil is ploughed and replenished with nutrients for growing crops; rain water is harnessed by building powerhouses for generating electricity. In fact, even humans are called a resource because by developing human skills, other humans can be benefited when resources are developed. They have utility and they function for satisfying human and social needs. There are also manmade resources such as buildings, bridges, canals, houses, factories, etc.



TYPES OF RESOURCES

Resources are generally classified into natural and human made resources. On the basis of their stage of development, resources can be classified as—potential, actual and reserve. The resources which exist in nature but have not been put to proper use are called potential resources. For instance, Africa has great potential resources in many of its rivers and waterfalls. However, all rivers have not been utilized fully for navigation or generation of electricity. Potential resources need a detailed survey for estimating their quality and quantity. Only those resources which have been surveyed and assessed for actual use are called actual resources. Their quality and quantity is ascertained on an actual viability. The part of an actual resource which can be developed profitably in the future is called a reserve.



Fact File

The Aral Sea, in former Soviet Central Asian countries of Kazakhstan and Uzbekistan was once the world's fourth largest lake. It has shrunk by 80% since 1990 and is one of the worst man-made disasters. It was brought about by mismanagement and diversion of waters of two rivers namely Amu Darya and Syr Darya for irrigating cotton fields of Uzbekistan and Turkmenistan.

On the basis of their origin, resources may be classified as—biotic and abiotic.

- Biotic resources:** These are derived from plants and animals. They include forest resources, wild and domestic animals, fish and birds.
- Abiotic resources:** These are derived from the non-living world, e.g., land, water arid air; mineral and power resources are examples of abiotic resources.

Let's Think

Why is it better to use paper bags than plastic bags?

On the basis of their renewability, resources can be of two types—exhaustible or non-renewable and inexhaustible or renewable.

- Exhaustible or non-renewable:** These are resources like minerals and fossil fuels that get exhausted with continuous use and are not easy to replenish. Judicious use of these resources would help make them last longer.
- Inexhaustible or renewable:** Resources that can be reproduced, regenerated or renewed within a period of time by physical, mechanical or chemical processes, are renewable resources. Solar energy, soil, water, wind, plants, wildlife and humans fall in this category. They are continuous and always available.

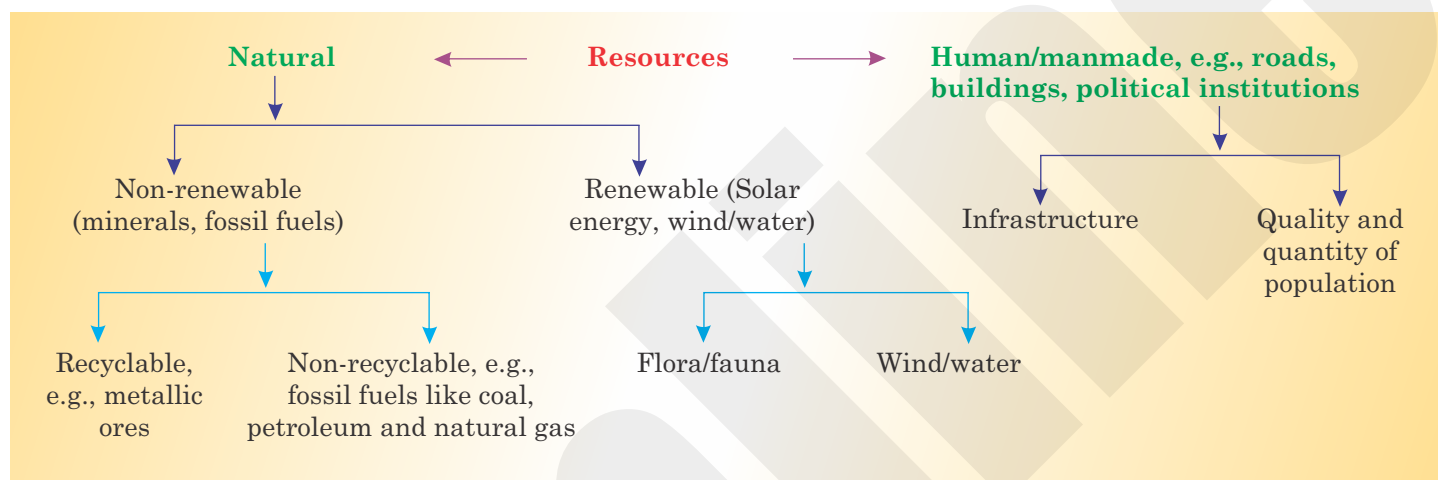
On the basis of their distribution, resources can be of two types—**ubiquitous and localized**.



- a) **Ubiquitous:** Resources that are found everywhere like land and air.
- b) **Localized:** Resources which are found only in certain places, e.g., coal and copper are formed in specific locations only.

All resources, whether natural or human, are not evenly distributed on the earth. Their development, availability and utilization is closely related to:

- i) the level of technological knowledge of the people of that region
- ii) the economic development of that region
- iii) the cost involved in exploiting and developing these resources
- iv) the availability of a good transport network
- v) social and political support in developing the resources



CONSERVATION OF RESOURCES

All resources should be used wisely. Not only do we need to assess resources, we should also preserve and protect them, avoiding wastage. The wise use of resources by avoiding misuse is known as **conservation of resources**. Economic development over the last few decades led to greater wealth and hence there has been a rise in consumption levels. Increased population and the rising demand for material goods and comforts has already caused depletion and degradation of many valuable resources. Certain species of plants, birds and animals have become extinct. The quality of air, water and land has been affected badly because of pollution and misuse, abuse and overuse of resources to fulfill human greed. In the name of development, people exploited the available resources thoughtlessly and today, mankind's very own existence is under threat.

SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF RESOURCES

Development is the use of resources and available technology to bring about an increase in the living standards and quality of life of a population. **Sustainable development** means progress without causing damage to the environment. It is development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. The future of our planet rests on our ability to conserve our resources

by avoiding further damage to the environment and to preserve the vast diversity on earth.

Many natural resources are exhaustible or available in limited supply. If they are consumed faster than they can be regenerated in nature, they are bound to be depleted or even exhausted. In the interest of sustainable development, it is important that we take steps for using resources judiciously.

Word Treasure

<i>Resources</i>	:	Gifts of nature that are useful for mankind.
<i>Patent</i>	:	It means the exclusive right over any ideas or invention.
<i>Technology</i>	:	It is the application of latest knowledge and skill in doing or making things.
<i>Stock of resource</i>	:	It is the amount of resource available for WE.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. Anything that satisfies human needs is called
- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| i) environment | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) a reserve | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) food | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) a resource | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. Abiotic resources are derived from
- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i) the non-living world | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) plants | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) animals | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) none of these | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. Bridges, canals, houses and factories are examples of
- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) actual resources | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) potential resources | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) biotic resources | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) man-made resources | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. This is an example of an ubiquitous resource.
- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| i) coal | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) copper | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) minerals | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) air | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. Which of the following is a human made resource?
- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| i) coal | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) copper | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) minerals | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) air | <input type="checkbox"/> |



2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- What is sustainable development?
- What do you mean by Natural and man-made resources?
- Define potential and actual resources?
- What is Non-Recyclable Resources?



“All resources whether natural or human are not evenly distributed on earth.”
Do you agree? Give reasons in support of your answer.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- What do you mean by the term resource?
- Explain sustainable development of resources.
- Why is conservation of resources an important need?
- How does a resource become a reserve?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- Resources that have been surveyed and quantified are resources.
- Resources are classified as biotic and abiotic on the basis of their
- resources are exhaustible.
- The judicious use of resources and preventing their waste is known as of resources.
- methods of utilization of resources is needed for sustainable development.

5. Give the correct term for each of the following.

- Resources derived from the living world
- Resources that can be renewed, reproduced or regenerated
- Ceasing of existence of species from surface of the earth
- Minerals that can generate energy

6. Distinguish between the following pairs.

- Natural and Man-Made resources
- Potential and Actual resources
- Non-recyclable and recyclable resources
- Conservation and sustainable development
- Biotic and Abiotic resources
- Exhaustible and Non-exhaustible resources

Value Based Questions



It is known fact that human beings have exploited nature and its resources for their own benefits. As today's citizen, what do you think of this issue? Do we owe it to the earth that we live on, to ensure that we do not bleed her dry? Express your views in a short paragraph.



Activity Zone

1. Collect recent information and pictures on conservation of any two resources from the Internet, newspapers, etc. Try to organize an exhibition on 'Conservation of Resources' in your school. Ideally, you should select issues/topics of concern to your locality/city/state.
2. Resources in Everyday Life.

Make a list of 20 items of daily use at home and in school. Now, try to find out the various sources from where they are obtained and write the list as follows :

Item	Source	Biotic/Abiotic
a) Cornflakes	Biotic	Maize
b) Table	Wood from teak tree	Biotic
c) Talcum powder	Chalk	Abiotic

LET'S SUMMARISE

NATURAL RESOURCES

Types and development

- Anything that is necessary for human survival and satisfies human needs is called a resource; natural resources acquire value when they are processed to meet the day to-day needs of humans.
- Humans are called a resource because by developing human skills, other humans can be benefitted and resources can be developed.
- There are also man-made resources such as buildings, bridges, canals, houses, factories, etc.

Conservation Of Resources

- The wise use of resources by avoiding misuse is known as conservation of resources.
- Sustainable development is development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.
- Steps need to be taken for judicious use of resources; involves preventing wastage of resources, preventing pollution and preserving the biological diversity on earth.
- Efforts need to be taken to reduce our needs, reuse and recycle resources as far as possible.

Types of Resources

- On the basis of their stages of developments resources can be classified into :
 - Potential resources which exist in nature but have not been put to proper use.
 - Actual resources are those resources which have been surveyed and assessed.
 - Reserve are a part of an actual resource which can be developed profitably.
- On the basis of their origin, resources may be classified into :
 - Biotic resources are derived from plants and animals
 - Abiotic resources are derived from the non-living world.
- On the basis of their renewability, resources may be classified into :
 - Exhaustible resources which get exhausted and are not easy to replenish.
 - Inexhaustible resources that can be reproduced, regenerated by physical, mechanical or chemical processes.
- On the basis of their distribution, resources can be classified into:
 - ubiquitous resources that are found everywhere
 - Localized resource which are found only in certain places.
- Availability and utilization of resources depends upon the level of technological of that region, cost of utilization of resources and the existence of a good transport network





Land and Soil Resources



Key Highlights

- ❖ Land Resources
- ❖ Depletion of Soil Fertility
- ❖ Soil Resources
- ❖ Soil Conservation

Let's Start With

Our soil is a non-renewable resource. It takes thousands of years for rocks to weather into soils, and hundreds of years for rich organic matter to build up. Our welfare depends, to a large extent, on our soil and climate. Entire civilizations can rise and fall depending on their soil quality.

This means that making the best use of our land and soil is very important for our well being and survival. To use our land wisely we have to understand soil. Our land is home to many unique plants and animals. They have developed here over millions of years in isolation. But we have already lost many species and could lose more without careful management.

Let's Think

What has led to a large scale destruction forest cover?

LAND RESOURCES

Land is the most important natural resource as human beings live on it and obtain most of their needs from it. Land covers about 29% of the total area of the earth's surface and of this small percentage, a large part is not habitable because it is ice or snow covered, too rugged or steep, climatically unsuitable, waterlogged, forested or a desert. The quality and distribution of land (its location) has a major role in deciding its usage.

Even most of our clothing requirements come from land. About 95% of human food requirements are obtained from land.

LAND USE

We use land for different purposes such as cultivation of crops, forestry, grazing livestock, construction of buildings, houses, canals and for mining and manufacturing. The



different uses that land is put to, is commonly referred to as **land use**. The pattern of land use varies from one region to another. It may also vary within a region over time.

Major land patterns of the world are:

1. Forests
2. Arable land
3. Pasture land/Grass lands
4. Rough grazing
5. Wasteland
6. Savannah
7. Mining, Fishing and Industrial centres.

Different factors are responsible for the changes in land use pattern of a country or region at a given time. **Physical factors** like topography, soil, climate, water, distribution of rocks and minerals, etc. are important determinants of land use. "These also include aspects like slope of the land, elevation and extent of temperature and precipitation, presence or absence of soil cover, availability of surface and ground water, nature of rocks and minerals. The availability of means of transport may accelerate the development of land resources.



Plains

Population distribution, development in technology, land tenure, government policy and other **human and economic factors** also play an important role in the changing pattern of land use of a country. For instance, the high cost of mining may leave minerals and low grade ores utilized.

Study the chapter, showing land use in various countries to understand the pattern of utilization of land in different parts of the world. Identify the countries having the highest percentage of land under crops, forests and pastures. Now study the map on land utilization.



Fisheries

It will be observed that fertile river valleys and plains are the most populated areas of the world specially in tropical and subtropical regions of the world because they are suited for agriculture. Over sixty-six per cent of the world population is concentrated in the subtropical and mid-latitude zones. 50% of the world's population lives in urban areas and this figure is expected to go up. These urban areas need more land for settlements, setting up of industries and other purposes which increase the pressure on land. As a result, more and more agricultural land is getting converted into urban colonies.

With increasing world population, especially in Asia and Africa, the pressure on land is increasing very rapidly. More forests and grasslands are getting converted to urban lands.



Land can be divided on the basis of private land and community land. Private land is owned by individuals whereas community land is owned by the community. Community land is the common property of all.

INDIA—LAND RESOURCES

Of the total land area of India (3.28 million sq. km) 30% is mountainous, 27% is covered by plateaus and 43% is plains. The plains are best suited for agriculture. The mountains and plateaus are rich in forest resources and minerals. Although our country has 2.42% of the world's total land area, it supports 16% of the world's population.



World—land use

India has a very high percentage of arable (cultivable) land, i.e. 57%. Australia and UK have more land under pasture. Japan has 67% of its total land area under forests. Canada which has a good percentage of its land area under forests has put its land area to other uses. However, for a balanced ecological development it is important that our land under forests be increased from the existing 22% to 33%. It goes to the credit of Indian farmers that with only 4% of area under pasture, they are sustaining the largest cattle population in the world.

LAND DEGRADATION

Land erosion is the main factor responsible for soil degradation and even its destruction. Among these factor responsible for soil erosion one before station.

Solid and liquid waste is constantly being dumped on the and. 23% of the world's usable land (excluding mountains and deserts) has been degraded and its productivity has been reduced. The main causes of this degradation are **deforestation**, overgrazing, agricultural mismanagement, establishment of industries and urbanization. Large parts of India, Pakistan, Egypt and USA suffer from



Concrete jungle allows no rainwater to seep into soil below



waterlogging and soil scarcity. Over 2 million hectares of land in the world is degraded due to improper waste disposal and landfills.



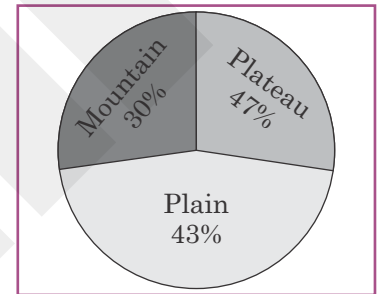
Postoral lands

One-third of the earth's land area (50 million sq km) has been affected by **desertification**, especially in Asia, Africa, Latin America, North America and around the Mediterranean. In 1994, some 180 countries signed the UN Convention to combat desertification after the **Earth Summit** in 1992. It came into force in 1996. It is important that such programmes be taken seriously to prevent **soil degradation** and restore degraded land.

CONSERVATION OF LAND RESOURCES

Conservation means protection, preservation and efficient utilisation of resources. We need to conserve our land resources for future generations. Land use must be planned properly to provide best results. Suitable methods should be adopted to:

- check soil erosion.
- check desertification.
- control waterlogging of soil.
- ensure afforestation.
- land reclaim
- check on overgrazing.
- regulate use of chemical pesticides and fertilizers.
- reclaim waste land so they are brought back to others uses.
- increase productivity of the land with improved farming methods such as the balanced use of manures and fertilizers, organic farming, regulated irrigation, crop rotation and multiple cropping.



India – land distribution

SOIL RESOURCES

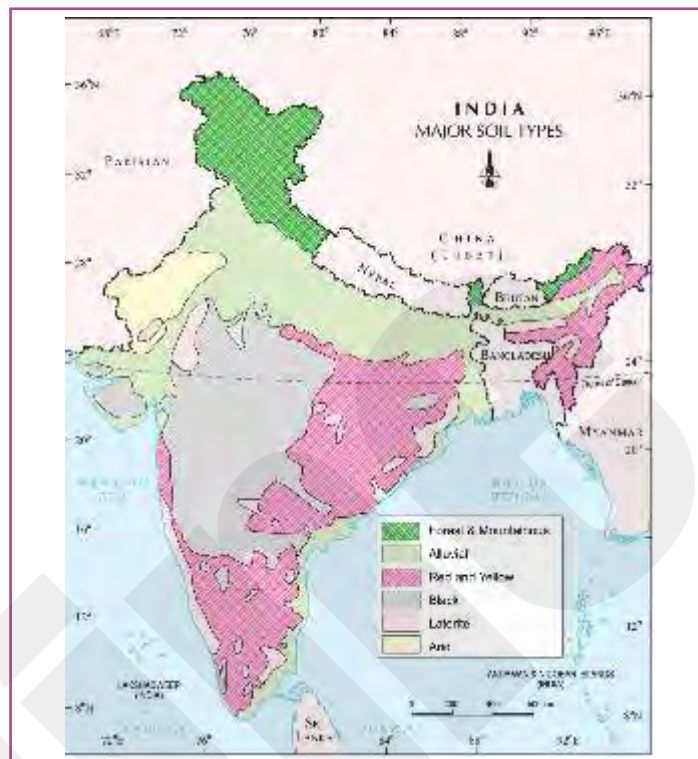
Soil forms the thin upper layer of the earth's crust. It is made up of disintegrated rock and decayed remains of plants and animals in the form of humus. It also consists of moisture, air, small insects and organisms like bacteria. Soil is a very important resource, because all plants including crops, vegetables and trees need soil to grow. The importance of soil lies in its fertility and its capacity to produce crops. All land creatures depend on soil directly or indirectly for their food. Though it is a renewable resource, the process of its formation is very slow. It takes thousands of years for one centimetre of soil to form.

Soil is formed by the physical and chemical weathering besides the biological process of decay of plant and animal matters.

Soil formation is controlled by the following factors :



- Nature of the **parent rock** from which the soil is derived, determines the physical and chemical of the soil.
- Relief or topography which affects the drainage of the area. Soils are very thinly spread over mountains slopes and accumulate in deep layers in the lowlands.
- The **climate**, especially temp. and precipitation, are significant. Frequent changes in temperature can lead to quicker soil formation.
- Time** is important to determine the depth of the soil and its age.
- Organisms present in the soil help to add humus, thereby increasing the water retention capacity of the soil.



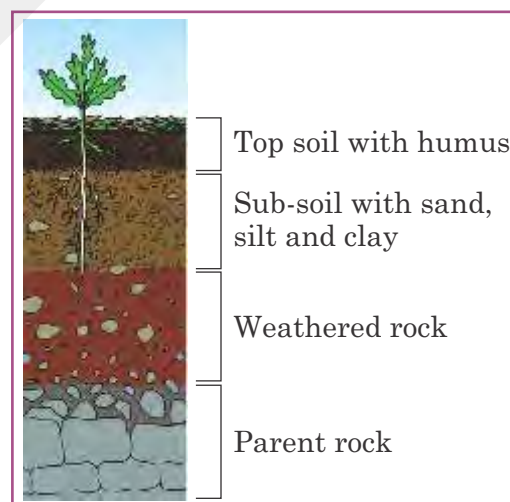
Soils of India

COMPOSITION OF SOIL

Soil has organic and inorganic components. Organic elements include the decayed remains of vegetation and animals, i.e., humus. The inorganic elements include mineral and salts such as nitrogen, potassium, magnesium, sulphur, phosphorus, calcium and iron.

The upper layers of the rock gradually break up into sizeable pieces. They, in turn, give space to smaller pieces. This process continues to give a fairly thick layer of fine grained top soil. This surface layer is more fertile as it contains humus, minerals, salts and soil moisture.

It is made up of finer particles. The soil which lies below the top soil is neither fully weathered nor decomposed. It does not contain much organic matter and is therefore, not as fertile as the top soil. Below the subsoil lies the weathered parent rock consisting of large rocks and gravel. Unweathered solid rock lies below the weathered rock.



Soil profile

TYPES OF SOIL

The best soils are found in river valleys where annual floods renew it with silt. The valleys of rivers, Nile in Egypt, Chang-Jiang in China, Ganga in India and Mississippi in USA have rich soils. In temperate grasslands, soils are dark and rich in humus. These



fertile soils are called **chernozems** in the prairies of USA and Canada. Soils of semi-arid areas, rich in minerals and humus, are called *Pedocals*. Desert soils have sufficient minerals, but lack water. Soils in humid climates are acidic, but have less humus especially under cold conditions as in coniferous forests. They are called **pedalfers**.

Soils may vary in grain size from gravels, sands, silt to fine clay. Loam is a more balanced mixture of sand, clay and humus. It is ideal for plants to grow.



Fact File

When irrigation is not accompanied by proper drainage, waterlogging occurs. This brings salt to the soil surface where it collects at the roots of plants or as a thin crust. Rapid evaporation of ground water also adds salt to the soil. Thirty-six per cent of the total irrigated area in India has been damaged by salinization.

LAYERS OF SOIL

A **soil profile** is a section showing successive layers of soil which would appear if you cut straight down into the soil. Soils are generally formed in layers. Soils have four main layers. The different layers are shown in figure.

India—Soil Types

Types of soil	Occurrence	Characteristics	Crops grown
1. Alluvial	Northern plains and river valleys.	clay, silt and sand. very fertile	Rice, wheat, sugar cane, cotton, oilseeds and pulses.
2. Black soil, Regur or Black	Northwest of peninsular India, valleys of Godavari, Krishna, Narmada and Tapti, Maharashtra, Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh Chhattisgarh and Tamil Nadu	Moisture retentive, sticky when wet and cracks when dry. This aerates the soil.	Cotton, sugar cane, tobacco, oilseeds
3. Red	Eastern Deccan Plateau, Tamil Nadu, Kerala, Karnataka, Chhota Nagpur, Chhattisgarh and Odisha	Coarse, porous; does not retain moisture. High iron content	Wheat, rice, cotton, sugar cane, grown with irrigation and fertilizers.
4. Laterite	The hills of eastern and western Ghats and Assam in areas of high temperature and heavy rainfall	Acidic and porous. Thus needs to be enriched with fertilizers.	Coffee, rubber, Cashew, Tapioca
5. Desert	Northwest India in Rajasthan, north Gujarat and south Punjab	Loose, porous, coarse, alkaline	Maize, wheat and millets grown with irrigation of dry farming
6. Mountain	Hilly areas of Jammu and Kashmir, Sikkim, Assam and Arunachal Pradesh	Very thin layer of soil.	Tea, coffee and medicinal plants



DEPLETION OF SOIL FERTILITY

Soil can become unproductive by erosion, overuse and mismanagement in agricultural methods. The removal of the top layers of the soil on a large scale by rainwater, wind or humans is called **soil erosion**. The degree of soil erosion depends on many factors—soil components or structure, texture of soil, climatic conditions, slope of the land and cultivation methods.



Contour ploughing

This is further accelerated by human activities like overuse, and excess use of chemical fertilizers which can change the composition of soil. Over use would exhaust soil over time unless their fertility is replenished with balanced use of fertilizers and manures. Erosion by wind and running water, etc. also affect soil fertility. Soil is also depleted at many places by deforestation, overgrazing, over fertilization and overuse of insecticides. Soil is damaged by salinization and waterlogging, if it is overwatered.

Over nine million hectares of alluvial soil and seven million hectares of black soil (i.e. 12-25%) in India are saline and alkaline as a result of waterlogging and excessive irrigation.



Strip cropping

SOIL CONSERVATION

Soil conservation is an effort made by humans to prevent soil erosion and thereby retain the fertility of the soil. Soil conservation is possible if it is managed properly using appropriate soil management techniques and adopting the following measures.

- Practice of **terrace farming** and **contour ploughing** in the mountainous areas. Terrace farming is the practice of cutting steps in the hill slopes to provide flat land for cultivation and check the soil erosion. Contour ploughing is ploughing of the land along the contour in a parallel way instead of up and down the slope. This checks soil erosion by runoff. Field fallow rests the soil and rejuvenates damaged soils. A balance of traditional and modern techniques in agriculture would go a long way to conserve our land and soil resources.
- Control of the wasteful practice of slash and burn cultivation in northeast states.
- Control of deforestation, promoting planting of trees and plugging of gullies. In areas of clayey soils in the absence of vegetation, a lot of soil is washed away by **gully erosion** and **sheet erosion**.
- In arid regions, strong winds blow away a lot of the fertile part of the top soil. **Shelter belts** are rows of trees planted to check wind speed and reduce erosion of the soil by winds.



Terrace farming



e. Changing agricultural practices: **strip cropping** (i.e., sowing in the space between the rows of one crop with another crop instead of leaving it cultivated, is an effective means of protecting the soil), nitrogen fixing by crop rotation, multiple cropping, intercropping are other ways of maintaining the precious soil and land resources. A balance needs to be maintained between traditional and modern agricultural techniques for the best results in conserving land resources.

Word Treasure

<i>Deforestation</i>	:	Cutting of forests
<i>Desertification</i>	:	Empty area of land with little or no vegetation
<i>Soil degradation</i>	:	Process of determination of soil quality by erosion, excavation, pollution etc.
<i>Land use Pattern</i>	:	Use of land and its proportion under particular use distributed over an area.
<i>Pathogens</i>	:	Disease causing microorganisms.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

a. Land is generally used for

i) cultivation of crops

ii) construction of buildings

iii) grazing livestock

iv) all of these

b. Land owned by individual is called

i) community land

ii) public land

iii) common land

iv) private land

c. The term 'arable land' means

i) cultivable land

ii) degraded land

iii) common land

iv) arid land

d. River valleys have the best soils because

i) they are wet all the time

ii) annual floods renew it with silt

iii) they are low lying areas

iv) none of these

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

a. Define deforestation.

b. What is soil degradation?

c. Define land degradation.





Why is the surplus precipitation recorded between 20° and 45° latitudes in both the hemispheres?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. Why are land resources important? Why do we call it a limited resource?
- b. What are the factors that determine the changes in land use pattern of a country?
- c. What are the various measures adopted for soil conservation? (HOTS)
- d. Discuss the factors that control soil formation.

4. Give the correct term for each of the following.

- a. Soils that are found in Krishna—Godavari valley
- b. Planted row of trees to check wind speed and soil erosion
- c. Growing crops on steps along hillsides
- d. Land with little or no vegetation

5. Distinguish between the following pairs.

- a. Erosion and deforestation
- b. Contour ploughing and terrace farming
- c. Pedocals and pedalfers
- d. Chernozems and Humus

6. Fill in the blanks.

- a. Fertile river valleys and plains are densely populated because they are suitable to
- b. is the thin upper layer of the earth's crust, made up of disintegrated and decayed remains of plants and animals.
- c. of soil occurs when irrigation is not accompanied by drainage.
- d. Two major problems that affect soil as a result of over irrigation and



Value Based Questions

- a. Why is the land most important of all the natural resources?
- b. Is time factor important in the formation of soil? Discuss.

Activity Zone

Soil conservation drive

Divide your class into groups and find out the following:

- a. What is conservation?
- b. Why is conservation necessary?
- c. What are the different conservation measures?





Water Resources



Key Highlights

- ❖ Availability of water and water quality?
- ❖ Reasons for scarcity of water
- ❖ The uses of water
- ❖ Measures taken to conserve water
- ❖ Water resources in India

Let's Start With

Water forms the basis of life. It is renewable natural resource. The presence of water distinguish our earth from other planets. Humans, animals and plants cannot survive without water. Water is essential for all forms of life. The two main issues that need to be addressed with regard to water resources are water availability and water quality. In this chapter, we will touch upon these issues and try to develop an understanding of how water resources are used in India and why we face the problem of water pollution and water scarcity.

AVAILABILITY OF WATER

There are contrary views among scientists regarding the sources of earth's water. Astronomers consider comets, termed as gaseous clouds, which frequently hit Earth's primitive surface, contributing to its water content. Our earth is called the watery planet. This is because $\frac{3}{4}$ th of its surface is covered with water. The amount of water on earth has remained the same in volume. It constantly circulates in the different spheres of the earth through the water cycle. Water is found in three different forms—solids, liquids and gases. Of the total 1400 millions cubic km of water on earth, 97% is found in the oceans. Of the remaining 3%, two-thirds is locked up as ice sheets and glaciers. Only 1% fresh water, i.e. 14 millions cubic km found in rivers, lakes, ponds, wells, etc., is left for use. Half of this is groundwater.



Earth—blue planet



i) Areas surplus in water: In the equatorial belt between 20° N and 20° S latitudes, precipitation exceeds evaporation and transpiration. This results in availability of surplus water.

ii) Areas deficient in water: In the subtropical region between 20°N to 40°N and 20°S to 40°S, evaporation exceeds precipitation. So, there is scarcity of water in these regions. Thus, we find deserts such as Sahara, Kalahari and Namibia (Africa), the Arabian, Thar and Gobi deserts, the Atacama and West Australian desert in the subtropical regions of the continents.

Fresh Water is very unevenly distributed on the surface of the earth. It is available to us as (a) Surface water (b) Groundwater.

a. Surface Water: 3% surface water is found on our earth as fresh water in rivers, lakes, streams and ponds. Availability of fresh water depends on the amount of rainfall. Most of it is lost via runoff. Water seepage takes place after rainfall. This underground water is stored in aquifers.

b. Groundwater: Nearly one-third of the world's population gets its supply of water from wells and tube wells fed by low aquifers (rocks that can hold water). Although soil does filter the water that seeps through the surface to the aquifer to some extent, yet groundwater is not always safe for use without treatment.

Groundwater gets polluted by seepage from landfills, septic tanks and underground tanks filled with oil, chemicals or hazardous waste dumps. Lead, which is harmful for animals and humans, remains in groundwater permanently.

TREATMENT OF WATER

Treatment of water is essential to maintain its purity. That water is suitable for drinking is called "potable" water. Filtration and sedimentation are followed after disinfecting the water with chlorine. Drinking water can be obtained by several purification methods like UV method (Ultraviolet radiation to kill bacteria, virus, fungi), distillation and filtration method.

Let's Think

Two-third of the Earth consists of water. Why do we still have water shortage?

SCARCITY OF WATER

Scarcity of water due to increase in population is great demand. Drying up of water resources or pollution of water resources also leads to scarcity.

Water shortage is a recurring problem in most parts of Africa, West Asia and large parts of South Asia, Western USA, North West Mexico, parts of South America and nearly all of Australia. In 1990, 28 countries with population totalling 335 million experienced water scarcity. By 2025, fifty countries (including India, Peru, Korea, Nigeria, Poland) will enter into the category of water scarce countries affecting over 3 billion people worldwide.



To overcome the problem of water scarcity, it is essential for all of us to keep our water resources such as lakes and rivers clean.

The shortage of water because:

- Distribution of rainfall is unequal at different places and at different points of time. It is also not spread evenly over the year.
- There are floods in the monsoon season and droughts in summer. Most of the rainwater is lost as it quickly flows to the seas and oceans.
- Global warming is changing rainfall patterns.
- Transporting water over long distance is not feasible, so many areas face scarcity of water.
- The demand of water due to increase in population. Absolute consumption patterns have changed. Today, the urban consumer uses a lot of water, depriving the rural poor.



Fact File

We waste significant amount of the important water resource. We flush 1/3rd of our quality drinking water down the toilet, bathe in 17% and use 1.2% for dishwashing. Only 0.008% of drinkable tap water is actually used for drinking.

- Pumping water indiscriminately has resulted in falling water tables in India, China and USA.
- Modern agricultural technology involving the use of chemical fertilizers has increased the demand for irrigation water.
- The available water cannot be used because many lakes and rivers have been polluted with chemicals, fertilizers and pesticides by domestic agriculture, industrial wastes and effluents.
- Most rivers of the world have been diverted for irrigation and are mostly dry. The Ganga in India, Hwang Ho in China, Amu Darya in Central Asia, Nile in Egypt and Colorado in USA have been drained to numerous irrigation canals.
- Many tanks and ponds which were in use some decades ago in storing rainwater and recharging the groundwater have dried because of human overuse.



Fact File

Drinking water must be pure. Industry and electrical equipment requires water free from salt, else it leads to blocking of pipes and harms the machinery. Water for irrigation should be preferably sweet, not salty. Poultry, sheep and goats need water free from contaminating microbes just like humans, but they can tolerate higher levels of salt than humans. That is why the salty water of the Great Artesian Basin in Australia is able to sustain large sheep populations.



THE PROBLEM OF WATER QUALITY

Water in its pure term is odourless and colorless liquid. It easily gets contaminated with hundreds of different types of waste that affect its quality. Not only is scarcity of water a major problem, the poor quality of water is also a cause of worry. It is estimated that 80% of all diseases in developing countries happen due to contaminated water. Water contaminants come from sewage drains and factories. They discharge pollutants into water bodies through pipes and sewers. They are also transported by rainwater that flows across the soil, picking up pollutants and discharging them into water bodies. The main problem of water quality is waste infuse disease causing pathogens in water and make it dangerous for human or even animal consumption. The water borne disease are cholera, typhoid and amebic infections.

WATER RESOURCES IN INDIA

Assuming that the whole country gets an average annual rainfall of 50 cm and distributing it evenly over the total area of 3.28 million sq. km, it is found that total water resources are about 167 million hectare meters (1 hectare = 10,000 sq. meters. If one meter deep water is allowed to stand on one hectare, we call it a **hectare meters**). Of this total, 66 million hectare meters can be used for irrigation.

81 million hectares is our gross irrigated area. Of the 40 million hectare meters of usable ground water resources, only 10 million are being utilized.

Water is impounded by making dams on rivers so that it is available in the seasons of shortage. Excess water from areas that have surplus water is transferred to areas in need of water by an extensive network of **canals**. As rivers are not confined to a single state, an integrated system is devised for a **river valley project** and it gives several benefits like irrigation to drought-prone areas, control of floods, generation of electricity, providing water for domestic use and supporting tree plantation to conserve groundwater and soil. Such projects are called multi-purpose projects. The lake in which the water is stored behind the dam is stocked with fish.

India's first such project was set up on the river Damodar, a tributary of the Ganga that flows through Bihar and Bengal. The Damodar vally project is a copy of Tennessee valley project of America. Thereafter, many such projects were set up in different parts of India.

The water cycle helps us to get a regular annual supply of fresh water. Although it is a renewable source, many parts of the world are facing water scarcity. How much water does a person need? This varies with climate, life style, culture, tradition, diet, technology and wealth. At least, 50 liters per person per day is required though 100-200 litres is recommended.

Some Major River Valley Projects in India

Projects	River (Dams/Lake)	States benefiting
Damodar Valley Corporation	Damodar (Tilaya, Maithon, Panchet hill, Konar),	Bengal, Bihar, Jharkhand
Bhakra Nangal	Satluj (Bhakra, Nangal, Govind Sagar Lake)	Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Himachal Pradesh, Delhi



Hirakud	Mahanadi (Hirakud, Tikarpara Naraj)	Odisha, Chhattisgarh
Tungabhadra	Tungabhadra (Tungabhadra)	Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka
Chambal	Chambal (Gandhi Sagar in M.P., Ranapratap Sagar in Rajasthan, Kota Barrage)	Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan
Rihand	Rihand (Govind Ballabh Pant Sagar Lake)	U.P., Bihar
Kosi	Kosi (Hanuman Nagar in Nepal)	Bihar, Nepal (International project)
Nagarjuna Sagar	Krishna (left bank & right bank Canal)	Andhra Pradesh
Sardar Sarovar or Narmada Valley Project	Narmada	Gujarat, Rajasthan

CONSERVATION OF WATER RESOURCES

Some measures that can be taken for water conservation are:

1. Save rainwater

- Plantation of trees and other vegetation to check run-off and allow rainwater to seep underground.
- Restoration of traditional ponds, tanks and lakes to store the rainwater. Allow percolation of water into the ground by constructing dams.
- Levelling, bunding, contour ploughing and terracing in the fields to check runoff.
- Water harvesting in both urban and rural areas to store rainwater.



Fact File

The Tennessee Valley Association, a multi-purpose river valley project, was designed on the river Tennessee, a tributary of the Ohio river in USA.

2. Save irrigation water

- Adopting agricultural practices that need less water. Water losses can be prevented by concrete or brick lining of canals to check seepage loss.
- Switching to organic farming and dry farming methods as well as growing of drought-resistant crops.
- Promoting sprinkler irrigation and drip irrigation. In the drip irrigation method, water is supplied to plant roots by trickling through holes in a network of underground pipes. This would prevent water loss by evaporation in dry areas.



3. Save industrially consumed water

- Recycle water which was used for cooling of pipes in power plants. Reuse water with the help of modern technology.
- Effluents should be treated before they are drained into rivers or lakes.

4. Save domestic water

- Check loss of water that occurs due to wastage, leakage and defective pipes.
- Educate people to use less water in washing cars; save water by using washing machines.
- Install water-saving taps and other such sanitary ware in toilets.
- Waste water of kitchen is used for cleaning floors or in the garden.



Rain water harvesting

In most parts of our country water is brought for daily use from long distances. The safe water drinking is not available to about 8 Billions people in cities and villages. In many parts of India, people have to walk for a distance of over a kilometer to fetch water. Water for agriculture and other purposes is inadequate and irregular. It is very important that we make best of what is available to us in an economical manner.

Word Treasure

<i>Ground water</i>	:	Rain water that seeps into the ground.
<i>Water table</i>	:	Level at and below which water is found in the ground.
<i>Effluent</i>	:	Waste water from factories and industrial complexes.
<i>Dam</i>	:	A structure built across a river with different purposes, e.g. flood control, irrigation and for generation of hydel power.
<i>Multi-purpose project</i>	:	River valley projects with many benefits such as flood control, irrigation, generation of hydel power etc.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- In areas of surplus water,
 - it rains constantly
 - evaporation exceeds transpiration
 - precipitation exceeds evaporation
 - there is no sunshine

- b. A method used to purify contaminated drinking water is
- i) UV method ii) distillation
- iii) filtration iv) all of these
- c. India's first river valley project was set up on the river
- i) Mahanadi ii) Chambal
- iii) Kosi iv) Damodar
- d. Water tables in India and China have fallen drastically because of
- i) less rainfall ii) indiscriminate pumping of water
- iii) animal rearing iv) cultivation of crops
- e. The Great Artesian Basin in Australia can sustain large sheep population because
- i) the weather is suitable ii) the sheep can tolerate high levels of salt in the water
- iii) there is plenty of water iv) none of these

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. Why salty water is able to sustain certain animals?
- b. What is saline water?
- c. What is potable water?
- d. What is the reasons for scarcity of water?
- e. What is the use of water?



Why is the surplus precipitation recorded between 200° and 45° latitudes in both the hemispheres.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- a. 'In spite of 3/4th of earth's surface being covered with water, not only scarcity of water is a major problem, the poor quality of water is worrying'. Explain.
- b. Suggest different steps to conserve water.
- c. What are multipurpose river valley projects? Why are they called so?
- d. Discuss the importance of water resources in India.
- e. Name the methods that help to purify drinking water.

4. Give the reasons for the following statements.

- a. Drip irrigation method needs promotion.
- b. Salty water is able to sustain certain animals.
- c. Many tanks and ponds have dried up.



- d. Distribution of rainfall is unequal.
- e. Drinking water must be pure.

5. Fill the following blanks.

Project	River	States benefiting
a. Hirakud	Odisha
b.	Chambal
c. Rihand	Rihand
d.	Narmada
e. Bhakra Nagal	Gujarat

6. Match the following.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| a. Kalahari | i) Meghalaya |
| b. Chlorine | ii) Desert |
| c. Damodar | iii) Disinfecting the water |
| d. Ohio | iv) Distillation |
| e. Cherrapunji | v) USA |
| f. Pesticides | vi) A tributary of Ganga |

7. Write True or False against the following statements. Rewrite the incorrect ones.

- a. Ground water gets polluted by seepage from landfills.
- b. Lead is harmless for animals and humans.
- c. We waste significant amount of important water resources.
- d. Mass destruction of forests have increased the speed of run-off.
- e. Water cannot be reused.



Value Based Questions

We read and talk a lot about the need to conserve water. But, do we actually think about it seriously and takes measures in our homes?

Make a list of activities at home that you feel amount to the wastage of water. Then write a paragraph giving suggestions as to how this can be checked.

Activity Zone

Get Ready to Celebrate

Celebrate World Water Day on 22 March to understand the importance of this scarce resource. Increase this awareness among the people around you through articles in your school magazines, newspapers, posters, slogans, etc.





Natural Vegetation and Wildlife



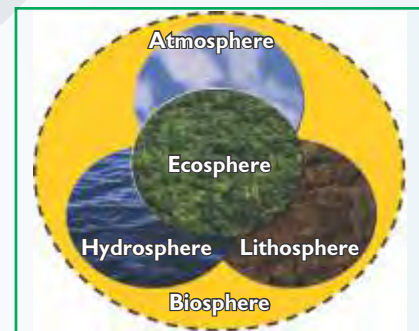
Key Highlights

- ❖ Vegetation
- ❖ Major Vegetation Types
- ❖ Distribution of Natural Vegetation
- ❖ Wildlife Resources
- ❖ Depletion of Forest and Wildlife Resources
- ❖ Factors Responsible for Depletion
- ❖ Conservation

Let's Start With



Natural Vegetation is one of the greatest natural resources of the earth. It refers to plants growing in any region, controlled by the climate of the region. It is a main part of **biosphere**. It is found only in the contact zone of lithosphere, hydrosphere and atmosphere. In the biosphere, there is interdependence and interrelationship among living things and their physical environment. The life supporting system on the surface of the earth is known as the ecosystem. The size of the ecosystem may vary from pond to a whole ocean to a rainforest. In fact, the biosphere is itself treated as big ecosphere as shown in the figure.



Interdependence and interrelationship among living beings in a biosphere

VEGETATION

Vegetation and wildlife are valuable resource in the ecosystem. There are two forms of life on the earth—plant kingdom and animal kingdom, though microbes are regarded as a separate division. There are about 3 lacs species of plants and 10 lacs species of animals on the earth. Most plants are green and make their own food through photosynthesis. This promotes interdependence and exchange of matter and energy between the three realms of earth—land, air and water.

Vegetation is the assemblage of plant species living in association with each other in a given



environmental framework. Forests constitute the most important natural vegetation zones on the earth. They contain thousands of plant and animal species which interact with climatic elements like temperature, pressure as well as surface relief features and soil cover.

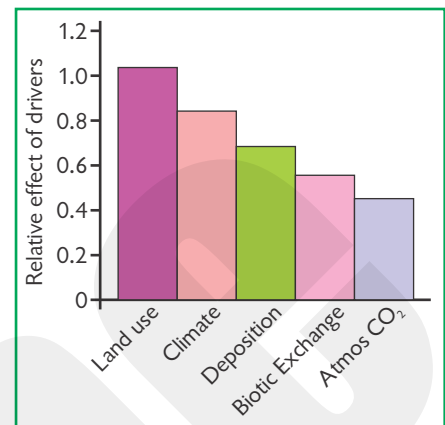
MAJOR VEGETATION TYPES

The major vegetation types of the earth include forests, grasslands, scrub and tundra. The region where trees grow close to each other are called forests. The two main subdivisions of forests are: Evergreen and Deciduous. In the evergreen forests, the trees of different species shed their leaves at different times. Such forests always appear to be green. The trees in the deciduous forests shed their leaves during a particular dry season. It helps in conserving the moisture and reducing loss through transpiration. There is a great variation in species known as biodiversity in these vegetation zones. They are basic natural ecosystems. We shall however, discuss only forest resources in greater detail.

DISTRIBUTION OF NATURAL VEGETATION

Forests are generally classified on the basis of climatic regions. They also conform to various latitudinal zones by which they are differentiated. The growth of natural vegetation primarily depends on climatic factors including moisture. The broad vegetation types of the world are distributed over the globe on the basis of precipitation and temperature. The geographic distribution of the major forest types of the world are given below:

- 1. Tropical Evergreen Forests:** They are found in the climatic region between 5° to 10° North and South latitudes. The Amazon Basin, the largest rainforest area in the world, is found in this zone.
- 2. Coniferous Forests:** The Coniferous Forests areas are located between 50° to 70° in North latitudes. This vegetation zone is also called Taiga and is found in Siberia, northern Canada. This ecosystem is under threat because of climatic change.
- 3. Temperate Evergreen Forests:** They are located in the temperate climate zone between 30° and 40° North and South latitudes. The climate is characterised by wet winter and dry summer season.
- 4. Mediterranean Forests:** The Mediterranean climate or biome occurs on western margins continents in mid-latitudes. Wet winters, warm and hot summers permit growth of Mediterranean Forest.
- 5. Tropical Deciduous Forests:** These forests are found in the monsoon climatic zone and are also called **Deciduous Monsoon Forests**. There are two types of



Factors affecting biodiversity

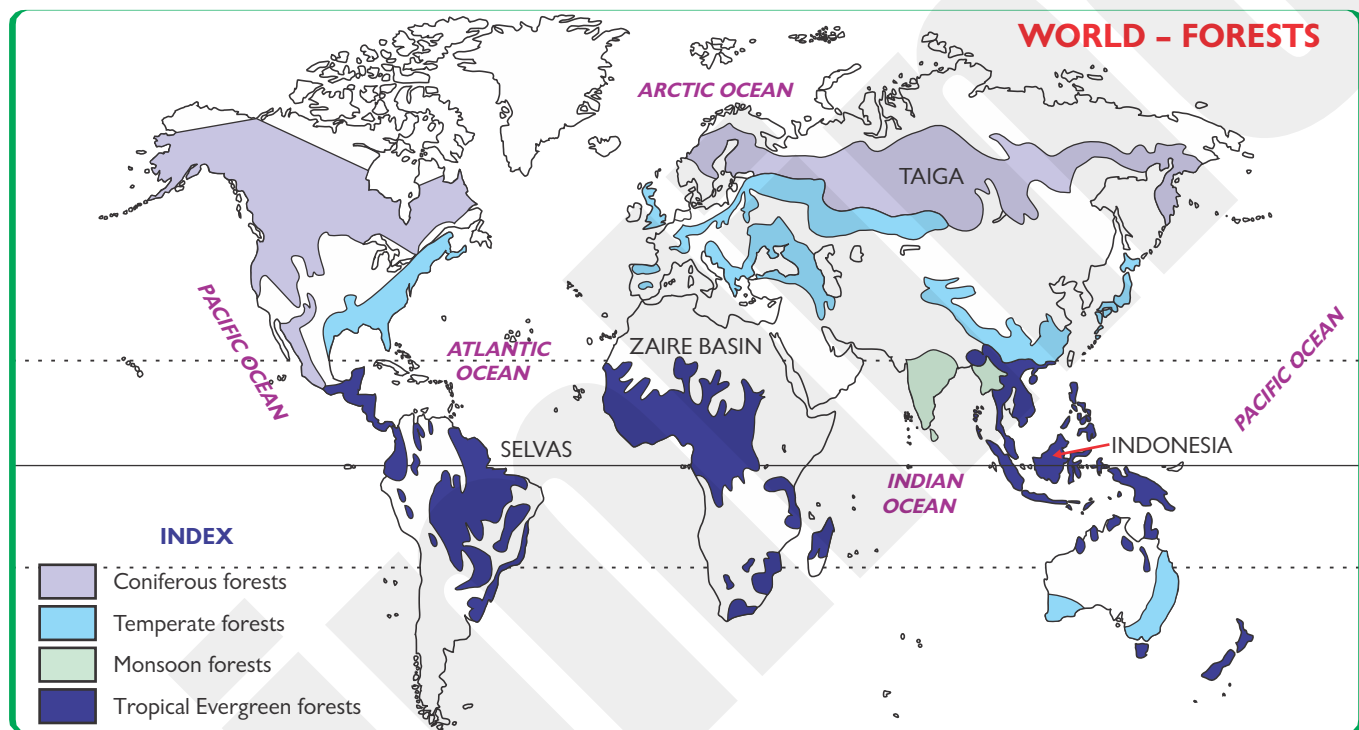


rainfall of above 200 cm. The second one is Deciduous Forests. The trees of the forest shed their leaves during dry season to conserve moisture. They generally receive rainfall between 100-200cm. Monsoon Deciduous Forests are spread all over India, Pakistan, Myanmar, Thailand, Laos, Vietnam, East Africa, Central America, East Brazil and North Australia.



Evergreen, Deciduous and Desert types vegetation

6. Mid-Latitude Deciduous Forests: This vegetation has some characteristics of West European type climate found in parts of China, Japan, Siberia, Manchuria, Korea, North-West Europe, West Canada and St. Lawrence basin. Temperature during winter may fall down to 6°C. Therefore, trees shed their leaves in winters in order to protect themselves from extreme cold.



World-Forest types

Let's Think

The Forest Research Institute (FRI) in Dehradun conducts research and forest extension activities in various states. Its focus is to increase forest productivity through research and suitable forest management techniques.

WILDLIFE RESOURCES

Wildlife refers to plants, animals, birds and other living creatures in a natural habitat. All the domestic animals have come from wild animals. Therefore, wild ancestors of domestic animals are essential for survival of the species. Even those animals which have not been domesticated are important for evolution of life on the earth. In the last 100 years, a number



of wild creatures have either become extinct or are endangered. The Savanna Grasslands of Africa contain the world's largest pool of wildlife resources. Many animals in these grasslands have been hunted down. Each type of vegetation zone discussed earlier has its own type of wild animals. In India, there is a rich variety of birds and animals. There are over 89,451 known species of wild animals, 3,546 species of fish and 1,232 species of birds in India.

Tropical Rainforests are full of animals like, eagles, treefrogs, monkeys, gibbons, howlers, orangutans, sloths, treeboas, constrictors, beetles, bats, wasps. In India jaguars, tapirs and rhinoceros are also found in forests.

In the **Deciduous Forests** of India, lions are found in the Gir Forest of Gujarat. In the Temperate regions, the animals of Deciduous Forests include bears, deer, wolves, porcupines, badgers, opossums and wildbears. Frogs, musk rats, salamanders and turtles are found near the water sources. A good number of birds live in bushes or on trees.

Animals of the deserts include many types of insects, lizards, vipers, scorpions, tortoises, foxes and camels. Some typical animals of other deserts are also found in India.

VULTURES

Vultures have a useful role to perform. They generally feed on dead matter and help in decomposition of organic matter. Some birds of prey in the Indian subcontinent are today threatened species. They are dying because of kidney trouble possibly on account of pollution. Efforts are now being made to ban certain drugs which cause kidney failures in these animals.



Vultures are threatened species

DEPLETION OF FOREST AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES

Today, human activities pose the greatest threat to wildlife and its natural habitat. Great damage has been done to wildlife by cutting forests, constructing roads, railways, industrial complexes and cities. The damage done to their natural habitat has led to the extinction of many species of plants and animals.

The recommended minimum forest cover is about 33% of the total geographical area. The world forest cover has already come down to 30% of the total land area of the world. In some countries including India, forest cover is less than 20%. Over the last two centuries some countries have lost between 50% to 100% of their forest cover.

The countries where maximum forest cover has been lost in the past decade, in descending order of depletion are: Nigeria, Costa Rica, Thailand, Ecuador, Colombia, Brazil and Indonesia.



Deforestation

FACTORS RESPONSIBLE FOR DEPLETION

The factors responsible for depletion of forest cover and wildlife are many and varied. They differ from region to region and country to country as described below:

- (i) **Deforestation** : Rapid growth of population has put huge pressure on resources like agriculture, habitations, industries, roads, etc. It gave way to deforestation on a large-



scale. Deforestation has also led to the loss of natural habitats, plants and animals.

(ii) Hunting and Poaching: Illegal hunting of animals for pleasure and trade, is called poaching. Wild animals are poached for their hides (skins), nail, teeth, horns as well as feathers. Some of the animals that are victims of poaching on a large-scale include tigers, lions, elephants, rhinoceros, crocodiles, deer, ostrich and peacock. The animals in Savanna Grasslands and in Himalayas or even in the desert of Rajasthan have been killed for sport and pleasure. Many others are killed for meat, wool or for trade in animal products like ivory obtained from elephant tusks.



Hunting and Poaching of animals

(iii) Pollution: It results in climate change and global warming which in turn cause damage to forest resources on account of localisation and tolerance to heat intensity. It also poses a serious threat to wild animals.

(iv) Economic Exploitation: Commercial utilisation of trees and forest products is very high. In Monsoon areas, the economically viable trees of Asia such as sandalwood, teak and various other species are exploited at a rate several times faster than their renewal.



Some agricultural crops are used for biofuels or agriculture

(v) Agrifuels: In South America, vast tracts of forest lands of Brazil and Venezuela have been devoted to cultivating crops that are useful for producing bio-energy. This has also caused loss of habitats of wild animals.

(vi) Other Agents: Soil erosion, floods, landslides, extension of deserts and grazing by domestic animals are other important causes of depletion of forest resources.

CONSERVATION

We have already studied earlier that conservation is a principle-based on certain goals. These goals in case of forests include:

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| (i) Presevation of biodiversity | (ii) Sustainable resource use |
| (iii) Better quality of life, clean air and water | (iv) Aesthetic pleasure |

Some methods of conservation are as follows:

(i) Institutional Measures: The government has formulated Forest Laws and established National Parks, Wildlife Sanctuaries and Biosphere Reserves to protect the natural vegetation and wildlife. Some of the special projects like Project Tiger have saved the tiger from extinction. Anti-pollution legislation have also passed by countries. The killing of wild animals and trade in their products like ivory (elephant and antlers) are also prohibited by law. India has so far set up 18 Biosphere Reserves, 102 National Parks and 515 Wildlife Sanctuaries.

(ii) Afforestation: This means planting of trees where they have been cut down, on vacant



lands, wastelands, swamps, roadsides, parks, etc.

(iii) **Legislation:** To prohibit cutting down of trees without prior permission.

(iv) **Prevention:** Preventing loss on account of calamities like floods and forest fires. Some fires occur naturally and others due to negligence. Both can be prevented with proper planning.

(v) **Community Initiative:** An example of conservation is the community initiative taken by Bishois in Rajasthan. They have maintained vast areas under forest cover in an arid area. The Yellow Stone National Park in USA is another example. Africa which was earlier famous for hunting expeditions called Safari is now known for its National Parks in the Savanna region.

CITES

The Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (CITES) of Wild Flora Fauna is an international body. Its main aims are:

- Prevent poaching.
- Prohibit international trade in species of wild animals and plants.
- Protect wild plants and animal species. Nearly 28,000 species of plants and 5,000 species of animals are protected under this agreement. Some examples of protected species of plants and animals are orchids, aloes, corals, cacti, dolphins and bears.

Natural vegetation and wildlife are important for energy through food chain and oxygen in atmosphere. Its resource value is not by exploitation but by making best and efficient use. It needs our care and protection.



Fact File

There are many parts of the world including India and the United States, forest fires are posing a serious threat to plant and wildlife resources. The entire flora and fauna are sometimes destroyed. Often dry grasses on the outskirts of forests catch fire by lightning. At other times, fire lit in forest because of fast blowing winds.



Word Treasure

- natural vegetation* : Plants growing in any region, controlled by the climate of the region.
- rainforest* : Dense forest of tall evergreen trees growing near the equator.
- deciduous forests* : The forests with broad leaved trees which shed during dry season and preserve moisture.
- endangered species* : Species of plants and animals facing danger of extinctions.



Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. constitutes the most important natural vegetation zones on the earth.
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| i) Animals | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Forests | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Climate | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Temperature | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. The Coniferous Forest areas are only situated between in North latitudes.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| i) 50° to 70° | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 70° to 90° | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 10° to 30° | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 20° to 40° C | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. refers to both plants and animals found in forests.
- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Grassland | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Wildlife | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Sanctuary | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Forest Cover | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. has also led to the loss of natural habitats, plants and animals.
- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Afforestation | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Deforestation | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Grassland | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Hunting and Poaching | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. The of Africa still contain the world's largest pool or wildlife resources.
- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| i) Pampas | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Savanna | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Prairies | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Velds | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- f. The are located between 50° and 70° north and south latitudes in temperate climate zone.
- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Temperate Evergreen Forests | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Deciduous Forests | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Coniferous Forests | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Evergreen Forests | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- What do you understand by the term forest?
- Why is the ecosystem so important to us?
- Name the factors influencing plant and wildlife resources.
- Name some animals that we found in the deciduous forests of India.
- What are Savannas?



Why the total forest cover of the world is decreasing continuously? Explain.



3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Distinguish between evergreen and deciduous forests.
- What factors have caused depletion of forest resources?
- Describe the steps taken for conservation of plants.
- How is hunting and poaching different?
- What do you understand by CITES? What are its main aims?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- is found only in the contact zone of lithosphere, hydrosphere and atmosphere.
- Recommended minimum forest cover is about % of geographical area.
- The Yellow Stone National Park is in
- The coniferous trees bear
- generally feed on dead matter and help in decomposition of organic matter.

5. Write 'T' for true and 'F' for false statements.

- Most plants are green and make their own food through photosynthesis.
- The growth of natural vegetation does not depend on climatic factors.
- Tropical Evergreen forests are found in the climatic region between 5° to 10° North and South Latitudes.
- The number of vultures is declining because of growth of population.
- Afforestation means planting of trees.

6. Match the columns.

Column A

- Amazon basin
- Taiga
- India
- Bishnois
- Yellow stone National park

Column B

- Coniferous forests
- Rajasthan
- USA
- Tropical Evergreen Forest
- Monsoon Deciduous Forest



Value Based Questions

- What are Mediterranean forests?
- How can we stop deforestation?



Activity Zone

Collect information about endangered species of trees and wild animals of India. Paste their pictures in your scrapbook. Identify these endangered animals.



LET'S SUMMARISE

Vegetation

- Vegetation is valuable resource in the ecosystem.
- Most plants are green and make their own food through photosynthesis.
- There are about 3 lacs species of plants and 10 lacs species of animals on the earth.
- Forests constitute the most important natural vegetation zones on the earth.

Distribution of Natural Vegetation

- Forests are generally classified on the basis of climatic regions.
- The growth of natural vegetation primarily depends on climatic factors.
- They also conform to various latitudinal zones by which they are differentiated.
- They are found in climatic regional between 5 to 10 North and South latitudes.

Depletion of forests and wildlife resources

- Human activities pose the greatest threat to wildlife and its natural habitat.
- The world forest cover has already come down to 30% of the total land area of the world.
- Rapid growth of population has put huge pressure on resources like agriculture, habitations and industries.
- Illegal hunting of animals for pleasure and trade is called poaching.

Major Vegetation types

- The major types of the earth include forests, grass lands, scrub and tundra.
- The region where trees grow close to each other are called forests.
- Such forests always appear to be green.
- It helps in conserving the moisture and reducing loss through transpiration.

Wildlife Resources

- Wildlife refers to plants, animals, birds and other living creatures in a natural habitat.
- All the domestic animals have come from wild animals.
- Each type of vegetation zone discussed earlier has its own types of wild animals.
- Some typical animals of other deserts are also found in India.

Conservation

- The govt. has formulated forest laws and established National Parks.
- Wildlife sanctuaries and Biosphere Reserves to protect natural vegetation and wildlife.
- India has so far set up 18 Biosphere Sanctuaries.
- 102 national parks and 515 wildlife Sanctuaries.





Agriculture Typology



Key Highlights

- ❖ Agriculture
- ❖ Major types of agriculture
- ❖ Difference between livestock and crops.

Let's Start With

Agriculture is the primary occupation of human kind. It provides a variety of products which are needed by human kind. Agriculture is the most ancient occupation in the world. In the Neolithic Age, man began to lead a settled and sedentary life. Since then, agriculture has really evolved and is a source of livelihood for more than half of the world's population. Today, its significance is unquestionable. It provides food to more than one billion people in India and billions throughout the world. Nearly 67% of Indians are engaged in this activity.

AGRICULTURE

Agriculture is art and science of raising plant life from the soil. Agriculture is one of the oldest- activities of humankind and today it included not only cultivation of crops but also domestication of animals.

Economic activities are of three types. These are primary, secondary and tertiary activities. Agriculture is a primary activity.

Agriculture refers mainly to the tilling of the soil for growing crops and rearing of livestock. Plant species that have been selected by humans to be cultivated for their use are called crops. Livestock refers to animals (cattle, goats, sheep and poultry) reared to be useful to humans. Sometimes, forestry and fishing are also included in agriculture.

The degree of agricultural development of a particular area is limited to certain physical factors such as climate, topography, soil, temperature and rainfall. Socio-economic factors such as available technology, mechanization, economic condition of the farmer, storage facilities, irrigation facilities, marketing opportunities, government policies, etc. also affect agriculture.



MAJOR TYPES OF AGRICULTURE

All agricultural activities may be divided into two broad categories depending on the geographical conditions, labour, demand of produce and the level of technology. These are:

SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE

When the farmer produces just enough to sustain his family and sells or exchanges the surplus with members of the local community, it is called subsistence agriculture. Subsistence agriculture can be classified as intensive subsistence agriculture and primitive subsistence agriculture.



Multiple cropping

INTENSIVE SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE

This type of farming is commonly practised in the densely-populated tropical monsoon regions of south and south East Asia. The land holdings are small. A large number of people depend on a limited area of land, so the land is cultivated intensely mainly with human labour, high quality seeds, plenty of fertilizers and regulated supply of water from irrigation. A variety of crops is grown in succession alternated with legumes (crop rotation) to retain soil fertility. This method of cultivation is most prevalent in India. Two crops may be grown simultaneously in a year on the same stretch of land (double cropping) to get more produce. The raising of more than two crops on the same plot of land annually is multiple cropping.



Shifting cultivation causes deforestation

PRIMITIVE SUBSISTENCE AGRICULTURE

This type of agriculture includes shifting cultivation and nomadic herding.

SHIFTING AGRICULTURE

Shifting agriculture is a very primitive method practised by tribal people who live in remote hilly or densely-forested regions such as the Congo basin in Equatorial Africa, Amazon basin in South America, Central America and Mexico, islands of southeast Asia and northeast India. These cultivators do not lead a settled life. They clear the land by cutting or burning the trees. The ashes enrich the soil and kill the insects and pests apart from providing them with a clear patch of land to cultivate. They scatter the seeds and tend to the fields for a year or so. The soil loses its fertility owing to heavy rains. Weeds and unwanted vegetation encroach the plots, so the tribulus move out to clear a fresh patch of forested land after one or two years. This is a very wasteful method of cultivation and yield of crops is very low. It is also called slash and burn agriculture.

Let's Think

Shifting cultivation is called Jhum in India, Ladang in Indonesia and Milpa in Central America and Mexico.



Shifting farming is known by Different names in different countries. Jhuming in north-east India , Ladang in Indonesia, Milpain central America etc.

Nomadic Herding

Nomads are people who move from place to place in search of water and grazing land for their animals. They rear cattle, sheep, goats, camels and yak. This practice is prevalent in the Sahara desert, east and southwest Africa, parts of west Central Asia and northern Europe. They carry their belongings such as tents, etc., on the backs of donkeys, horses and camels. In mountain area like Tibet and Andes, Yak and Llama are reared. Reindeer are the livestock in arctic and sub-arctic areas.



Rice cultivation

Commercial Agriculture

Commercial agriculture involves specialization in farming with the aim of selling the produce in the market to make profits. Areas that practise commercial farming generally have large size of land holdings, dependence on machines, and well-developed transport facilities with access to the markets. Money or capital is available to the farmers for purchasing machineries and arranging for transport of the produce.



Combine Harvester

Commercial Grain Farming

It is prevalent in the temperate latitudes in the Prairies of Canada and USA, in the Steppes of Russia and Ukraine, Pampas in Argentina, the Downs in Australia and the northern plains of India in the states of Punjab and Haryana. Wheat is the most important crop grown in USA and Australia, but in Russia and Ukraine, additional crops like oats, oilseeds and sugarbeet are grown to supply to industry. It is a method of extensive farming because the per capita availability of land is relatively high. Most of the work is done by machines—tractors, levellers, seed drills and combine harvesters.

Mixed Farming

When livestock are reared along with crop cultivation, it is known as mixed farming. It is that practice of farming in which crops are grown on the farms and cattle are also reared side by side. The farmers grow cereals and vegetables along with fodder, oats, maize and root crops for their livestock. Equal emphasis is given to crop cultivation and rearing cattle, sheep, pigs and poultry. Crop rotation retains soil fertility. Mixed farming is generally followed in densely populated areas of Europe, eastern North America, Argentina, southeast Australia and South Africa.



Dairy farming



Plantation Agriculture

It is mostly practiced in the tropical and subtropical areas. It is a commercial form of agriculture that was introduced by the Europeans, nearly two centuries ago. In such farming one crop is produced on a large scale. Large estates are managed scientifically and efficiently like industrial units. Huge capital is invested for hiring cheap, skilled, local or imported labour that specializes in the production of the crop and arranging transport facilities to carry the partly or wholly-processed crop to the markets or ports. Rubber, tea, coffee, sugarcane and spices are the main crops grown on plantations. The produce is sold in the national as well as international market.



Plantation agriculture for tea and spices

S

SOME OTHER TYPES OF FARMING

Pastoral Farming

It has two forms—cattle ranching for meat and dairy farming for milk and milk products. Cattle are reared for meat in the drier parts on specialized ranches which have slaughter houses, meat packing or freezing facility and a transport network connecting markets and ports.



Fact File

Advancement in poultry production in India is called Silver Revolution. Poultry farming has progressed and developed to expand in areas around cities.

Dairy farming has been developed to meet the need of large urban areas and industrial cities. Milk is a perishable item, so excellent transport facilities are a must. Refrigerated tankers are also used. Milk-producing cattle are reared on fodder and hay. Machines are widely used for cleaning and milking the cattle that are mostly stall-fed and moved on conveyor belts. This type of scientific farming is prevalent mostly in the developed countries because huge capital investments are needed. Special efforts are made to promote effective cattle breeding, health care and veterinary services. Dairy farming is practised intensively in USA, Australia, New Zealand and Western Europe.

Sericulture and Pisciculture

Other methods of agriculture include sericulture or the rearing of silkworms to produce silk from their cocoons and pisciculture which is the farming of fish, oysters, prawns, crabs, etc.

Horticulture

It is the intensive production of vegetables, fruits and flowers on small plots of land as is done in most of Europe.



Horticulture



Viticulture

(cultivation of grapes) is widely practiced in France, Italy and Spain in Europe and other Mediterranean countries. The well-irrigated lands of California in USA produce olives, grapes, figs, oranges, prunes and apricots commercially for canning, juice and wine production.

Cooperative Farming

Cooperative farming are very successful in Denmark, Belgium and Norway. In India Cooperative farming are successful in Maharashtra and Gujarat.

In this system, the farmers pool in their resources and share the benefits accordingly. Land is also tilled collectively, so modern machines can be used effectively. Sale of products are made through a cooperative shop or sale outlet. Agriculture is carried out on farms owned and operated by the government in Russia. This type of farming is successful in parts of peninsular India.



Cooperative farming

Word Treasure

<i>Combine harvester</i>	:	A machine that harvests. Threshes and sacks wheat in one operation.
<i>Irrigation</i>	:	An artificial method to water plants/crops
<i>Kharif</i>	:	Crop sown on the onset of monsoons (June/July) and harvested in autumn(sept-oct)
<i>Humus</i>	:	Decomposed organic matter in soil.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

a. Animals reared to be useful to man are called

i) pets

ii) wild animals

iii) iron

iv) none of these

b. The agriculture practice prevalent in the Sahara desert is

i) nomadic herding

ii) plantation agriculture

iii) mixed farming

iv) none of these

- c. When a farmer produces just enough to sustain his family and sells the surplus, it is called
- i) subsistence agriculture ii) commercial agriculture
 iii) pastoral farming iv) truck farming
- d. The practice of growing two crops simultaneously on the same piece of land is called
- i) multiple cropping ii) shifting agriculture
 iii) double cropping iv) crop rotation
- e. Viticulture is the
- i) rearing of bees ii) process of making vitrified tiles
 iii) cultivation of grapes iv) none of these

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. What do you mean by agriculture?
 b. What is shifting cultivation?
 c. What is sedentary intensive of agriculture?
 d. What do you mean by extensive farming?
 e. Define and explain mixed farming.



In which parts of the world is sedentary intensive agriculture practised?

3. Answer the following question in detail.

- a. Define agriculture. What are the physical factors that limit the agricultural development of an area?
 b. Why is shifting agriculture a wasteful method of cultivation?
 c. 'The method of cooperative farming is becoming popular'. Explain the statement giving reasons.
 d. What is the importance of agriculture in an economy?
 e. Discuss different types of pastoral farming.
 f. What are the features of commercial agriculture?

4. Write true or false against the following statements. Rewrite the incorrect ones.

- a. Nomadic herding is prevalent in the Sahara Desert.
 b. Rice is the most important crop grown in USA.
 c. Shifting cultivation is called milpa in India.



- d. Two crops grown simultaneously in a year on the same stretch of land is called double cropping.
- e. Agriculture is carried out on farms owned and operated by the government in Russia.
- f. A single crop grown in rotation is called crop rotation.

5. Give reasons for the following answer.

- a. Modern farming techniques demand huge quantities of water.
- b. Intensive subsistence agriculture is most common in India.
- c. Dairy farming is mostly prevalent in developed countries.
- d. Crop rotation retains soil fertility.
- e. All places in the world are not equally well suited for cultivation of crops.
- f. Transport facility is important in plantation agriculture.

6. Match the following.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| a. Ladang | i) more than two crops |
| b. Followed by tribal people | ii) settled life |
| c. Multiple cropping | iii) send with refrigeration facilities |
| d. Neolithic cropping | iv) milch |
| e. Milk producing | v) Malay peninsula |
| f. Truck farming | vi) shifting agriculture |

7. Distinguish between the followings pairs.

- a. Subsistence and commercial agriculture
- b. Horticulture and viticulture
- c. Extensive commercial and intensive subsistence farming



Value Based Questions

- a. Describe the geographical requirements and areas for sugarcane cultivation.
- b. Indicate the main areas of cultivation of wheat and describe the favourable conditions for its growth.

Activity Zone

Prepare a project on wheat/rice under the following heads.

- | | |
|--|---|
| a. Geographic conditions for growing the crop. | b. Distribution of the crop in the world. |
| c. Export and import in the world. | d. production of crops in the world. |





Important Crops



Key Highlights

- ❖ Major Crops
- ❖ Food Crops
- ❖ Cash Crops
- ❖ Development of Agriculture

Let's Start With



Agriculture is the primary occupation of humankind. It provides a variety of products which are needed by human kind. Agriculture not only supports human beings for their subsistence but also helps a large number of industries. A variety of crops which are grown are generally classified into food crops, commercial crops, fibre crops and beverage crops. Among the food crops rice, wheat and maize are the main crops. Cotton and jute are the main fiber crops and among the beverages, tea and coffee are important.

MAJOR CROPS

Climate and soil variations have led to growing a variety of crops. Broadly, there are food crops and cash crops. Food crops are crops that form the staple food of people such as rice, wheat, maize, millets, barley, oats and other cereals. These crops are also known as staple crop.

Cash crops are produced for supply to an industry and for export. Sugarcane, tea, coffee, rubber, cotton, jute, etc. are cash crops. Some like cotton, jute, sugarcane and sugar beet are also called industrial crops.

FOOD CROPS

Rice

It is one of the major food crops of the world. Rice is the chief food crop of the world. Asia accounts for ninety percent of the world's rice production. It needs high temperature of 25°C during growing season and heavy rainfall of 100 cm. It grows well in alluvial soil



with clayey subsoil. Rice is grown in terraces in hilly areas. Young plants need standing water. Nearly half tea population of tea world depend upon it as their staple food.

World distribution : China, Bangladesh, Southeast Asia, Japan, Korea, Sri Lanka, Brazil and USA are the leading producers of rice.

Distribution in India : Rice is grown in West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Andhra Pradesh, Odisha, Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Karnataka and Maharashtra. Tamil Nadu has the highest yield of rice.



Rice cultivation

Let's Think

Why are revolutions called green and white?

Wheat

Wheat is another major food crop which is high in protein and carbohydrate contents. Wheat is the main product of **latitude area**. It requires temperatures of 15°-25°C and rainfall about 75 cm. It needs a cool, moist growing season but sunny weather at the time of harvest. It grows widely in well-drained loamy soil. It needs adequate supply of chemical fertilizers and insecticides.

World distribution: It is extensively grown in the Steppes of Russia and Ukraine, Prairies of USA and Canada, most European countries, Downs of Australia, temperate grassland areas of Argentina and China.



Wheat Cultivation

Distribution in India: In India, wheat grows well in the north-western part of the country with relatively long winters and well-drained loamy soil. It also thrives well on black soil. Yield per hectare is highest in Punjab and Haryana. Uttar Pradesh and Punjab is the largest wheat-producing state. Wheat is also grown in Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Bihar. This food crop is exported, supplied to industry for processing so it can be called a cash crop.

Maize

It is an important food as well as a fodder crop. It requires moderate temperature of about 21°-27°C, 50-75 cms of rainfall and plenty of sunshine for growth. It cannot withstand frost. The soil should be fertile and well-drained.

World distribution: USA, Russia, Canada, Mexico, Argentina and Brazil are the important producers. In Asia it is mainly grown in India and China.

Maize cultivation Distribution in India : It is grown in Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.



Maize Cultivation



Millets

Coarse food grains like jowar, bajra and ragi are millets. They are generally grown on less fertile and sandy soils. Millets need moderate to low rainfall and high temperature for growth.

World distribution : China, Nigeria and Niger are well-known producers of this crop. In USA, millets are grown as fodder crop.

Distribution in India : It is a staple food for a large section of the poor in north and in peninsular India. It grows well in Maharashtra, Karnataka and Rajasthan.

CASH CROPS

Tea

Tea is a major beverage and a plantation crop. It grows in well-drained loamy soils. It requires fairly high temperatures and heavy rainfall. It grows on hill slopes. It requires a lot of manual labour. Tea is made from the leaves of a tropical plant which is native to India perhaps. Some believe that tea originated from Yangtze valley of China. Tea is halved for its flavour and quality as a stimulant. It is used for medical purposes.

World distribution : Kenya, Sri Lanka and China produce the best quality tea in the world.

Distribution in India : Tea is grown on the hill slopes and rolling plains of Assam, West Bengal, Kerala and Tamil Nadu. Some tea is also grown in Himachal in Kangra district but of inferior quality. India is the leading exporter of tea in world.

Coffee

Coffee is another beverage crop of African origin. It is a beverage made from coffee seeds and beans, after roasting and grinding. It requires warm and wet climate and well-drained loamy soil. Hill slopes are more suitable for growth of coffee. Two major varieties of coffee are Arabica or Mocha and coffee Robusta.

World distribution : Brazil, Columbia, Mexico, Indonesia, Jamaica and East Africa are the leading producers. Brazil is the leading producer and is called the Coffee Pot of the World.

Distribution in India : Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu are the producing coffee states in India.

Cotton

It is called a fibre crop. It needs high temperature, light rainfall and bright sunshine for its growth. It grows well in black soil that is water retentive, rich in lime and well-drained.



Coffee plantation



Cotton plant



World distribution : China, USA, Pakistan, Brazil and Egypt produce cotton on a large scale.

Distribution in India: Cotton is produced on a large scale in the states of Gujarat, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh and Punjab. It is also grown in Madhya Pradesh, Haryana and Uttar Pradesh.

Jute

Jute is considered as a golden fibre in the Indian sub-continent. Jute is called king crop. It grows well on alluvial soil and requires high temperature and heavy rainfall. Rainfall should be evenly distributed during the growing season.

World distribution : India, Bangladesh and China account for 85% of the world's jute production.

Distribution in India : West Bengal is the largest jute-producing state followed by Assam and Bihar.



Fact File

National Seeds Corporation, National Warehousing Corporation, National Food Corporation, Indian Council of Agricultural Research, Agricultural Universities, National Dairy Board, Demonstration Farms, Commission for Agricultural Costs and Prices.

Sugarcane

Sugarcane is a tropical plant and is a major source of sugar. It is a plantation crop that grows well from the cuttings of a stem. It grows well in high temperatures and a long growing season. It is a labour intensive crop as most of the work is done manually.

World distribution : It is produced in Cuba, India, Brazil, Mexico, Pakistan and China in the northeast coastal region. Sugarcane is also produced in Hawaii and Fiji.



Sugarcane plantation

Distribution in India : The states of Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Bihar, Haryana and Punjab grow sugarcane. The cane from peninsular India is of better quality with a higher sucrose content. The climate here is more favourable for the cultivation of sugarcane.

DEVELOPMENT OF AGRICULTURE

Industrial development gave a major boost to agricultural development. With the growth of world population, the demand for food grew. Over the past 30 years, the total amount of food in the world has increased at a faster rate than the average rate of population growth.



Agricultural Practices in a Developed and a developing country : A Coparative Study

A Farm in a Developed Country (USA)	A Farm in a Developing Country (India)
1. The size of the land holding is large, about 250 hectares.	The size of the landholding is small; 1/3rd of the landholdings are less than half a hectare and on an average they are 1.5 hectares. This is because of fragmentation of land due to inheritance laws.
2. Extensive agriculture is practised and single cropping is carried out on a large scale.	Intensive or subsistence agriculture is followed to get maximum output from a small plot of land. Efforts are made to consolidate land holdings through chakbandi and cooperative farming.
3. Farms are mechanised with tractors and combine harvesters. Most of the work is carried out by machines.	Farmers are too poor to make use of machines. Mostly, they may get together and hire tractors. Manual labour is utilised for most of the operations.
4. Dry or irrigated farming is practised.	Agriculture is heavily dependent on the monsoons. Floods or droughts are a regular feature in these regions.
5. HYV seeds, insecticides, pesticides are used extensively. Farmers are aware of the latest 'know-how'. Only 3% population depends on agriculture in the USA but can cultivate extensively with machines. Agriculture is run like a business.	Limited use is made of improved seeds, chemical fertilizers and pesticides. Farmers lack awareness, are poor and till the soil themselves or with the help of their animals and family members.
6. Mixed farming is practised. Livestock are reared and their produce supplements the farming income.	Land is generally used only for crop cultivation. Farmers can barely afford to keep animals for ploughing or transportation of the produce.
7. Farmers are educated, aware and have expertize in farming. They test soil samples, soil ability and water availability. They study the market trends to determine the kind of crops they want to grow. In case of a storm they can harvest thousands of acres within five to six hours. Farmers try to cut costs and reduce expenses for better income.	Most of the farmers are illiterate and at the mercy of the moneylender. They are being educated through a district/block level advisor. Tenancy farming is practised. As a result, the inputs are limited.
8. Excellent storage facilities are available	Storage facilities are lacking. A lot of the



at farms and grain is stored in silos. There is automated grain storage facility and well tied up systems for dispatch of produce to market agencies.	produce is lost because of rats or fungal attacks in the rainy season. All farmers do not access the available storage facilities provided by the government.
9. Yields of crops are generally low. Overall production is high because of large size land holdings.	Yields of crops are low but yield per worker is high because land holdings are small.

Efforts were made after the 1960s to increase crop production by replacing manures with chemical fertilizers, introduction of hybrid variety of seeds (HYV), increased use of pesticides, insecticides, fungicides and rodenticides. Marginal lands were ploughed and irrigation was extended to the very arid areas, changing the age-old ecosystem. Farms were modernized and in many countries, the farmers used computers and, weather satellite information system in agriculture. Tractors, threshers combine harvesters, etc., made work easy and fast. The storage and marketing facilities were revamped. As a result of these efforts, agricultural production increased worldwide. Today, there is much more food per person than there was in the 1970s, even though the total number of people has doubled. Some countries have developed genetically modified crops (to get higher yield). These crops are resistant to pests and weeds.



Fact File

Old farming techniques were replaced in the 1960s by introduction of modern methods with the use of chemical fertilizers, pesticides and genetically altered seeds. These modern techniques demanded huge quantities of irrigation water. Although crop production increased tremendously, negative impacts were seen in a decade or so resulting in great environmental degradation. Organic farming is a recent trend to revive the old agricultural methods. It combines traditional 'know-how' with modern technology.

Green Revolution in the latter half of the 1960s, in India, introduced many high-yielding varieties of seeds, facilitated use of fertilizers, and made it easier to take loans to invest in tubewells, pumps and tractors. All these efforts led to increase in productivity and made India self-sufficient in foodgrains.



- Fodder* : the green plant-fed given to cattle
- Fibre* : a material with hair-like structure, produced from vegetables
- Chakbandi* : means amalgamation and redistribution of land in a revenue estate
- Genetically modified crops* : seeds that have been developed to give higher fields or are resistant to pests or weeds.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. This is an example of an industrial crop.
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| i) Cotton | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Wheat | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Oats | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Bajra | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. The country that does not produce sugarcane is
- | | | | |
|------------|--------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| i) France | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Cuba | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) India | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Brazil | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- c. is the largest producer of coffee in the world.
- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| i) USA | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) India | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Brazil | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) China | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- d. is a fibre crop.
- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) Coffee | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Jute | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Pulses | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Tea | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. Well drained loamy soil is ideally suited for growing
- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| i) Wheat | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Oilseeds | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Coffee | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Cotton | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- f. plant grows well on slopes, on well-drained loamy soil and heavy rainfall and needs a lot of manual labour.
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| i) Cotton | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Tea | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Rice | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Coffee | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- g. A crop also called the golden fibre
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Sugarcane | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Cotton | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Jute | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) None of these | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- h. is the fodder crop.
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Maize | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Wheat | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Rice | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) None of these | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- i. are called beverages.
- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Pulse and nuts | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Peas and beans | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Tea and coffee | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Sugarcane and wheat | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following question.

- What type of climate is required for Rice.
- What conditions favours the cultivation of coffee ?
- Which countries are the main producers of tea?
- Name the chief plantation crops of India.
- Why are tall shady trees grown on coffee estates?



Describe the geographical requirements and areas for sugarcane cultivation.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- What are the two major varieties of coffee? Why are hill slopes more suitable for growth of coffee?
- Why is wheat the staple food of temperate areas?
- Mention the geographical conditions ideal for the cultivation of rice.
- What is the speciality of sugarcane from peninsular India?
- Name the important producers of Jute.
- Is India a rice producing or wheat producing country?:Justify your answer.
- What do you mean by millets crops?

4. Distinguish between the following pairs.

- Food crops and cash crops
- Plantation and fibre crops
- Storage facilities in a developed and a developing country
- Fodder crops and millets crops

5. Read the following and find out whether the following are practised in developing or developed countries.

- Yields of crops are generally low.
- Agriculture is heavily dependent on the monsoons.



- c. The farmers hire tractors.
- d. Extensive agriculture is practised.
- e. Excellent storage facilities are available.
- f. Tenancy farming is practised.

6. Complete the following table.

Crop	States under cultivation	Climatic conditions	Soil	Any other feature
Rice				
Wheat				
Coffee				
Tea				

7. Fill in the blanks.

- a. is the primary occupation of man kind.
- b. 4% of the population in US engage in
- c. is a major beverage crop.
- d. India is the leading producer of
- e. is considered as a golden fibre.

8. Match the columns.

Column A

- a. USA
- b. Jute
- c. Coffee
- d. Rice
- e. India

Column B

- i) chief food crop
- ii) Beverage crop of African origin.
- iii) Golden fibre
- iv) Leading producer of Tea
- v) Leading producer of cotton.



Value Based Question

- a. Production of food has increased in the past 30 years. But there are still millions of hungry people in the world. How do you think this problem can be solved? Given a few solutions.

Activity Zone

- a. Presentation

In groups, collect samples of cereals and oilseeds and find out the following :

- ★ required climatic conditions
- ★ nature of soil
- ★ cropping season
- ★ important producers

Now make a presentation in class.





Natural Disasters: Earthquakes, Cyclones, Floods



Key Highlights

- ❖ Natural Hazards
- ❖ Some common Disasters
- ❖ Other types of Disasters

Let's Start With



From time to time, we come to know about people in distress due to floods and other reasons in some parts of the country. Parts of the country that entirely rely on rain water for irrigating the crops face acute shortages of foodgrains due to insufficient rains. High intensity cyclonic winds can utterly destroy the entire population living on sea-side. Earthquakes can kill thousands of people and make them homeless. All these are examples of disasters that can occur in any part of the country, at any time. All these create calamities for the affected people.

NATURAL HAZARDS

Droughts, floods, earthquakes and cyclones are natural hazards that can occur anywhere and anytime. However, there are some parts of the country where there is greater apprehensions of any of these calamities. Bihar and Assam is said to be more prone to floods. Likewise, Odisha and Rajasthan is more prone to droughts. Gujarat is more prone to earthquakes. Sea-shores in Odisha are more prone to damage by cyclones originating on the high seas and travelling to the coastal areas at very high speed. The coastal regions are supposed to be more vulnerable to damage by cyclones.

Disaster Management is an important issue for a number of countries. India is prone to a number of natural hazards due to its geographical structure.



By studying the social and natural factors, we can predict the extent of human misery that may be caused due to a natural disaster.

Although the natural forces cannot be controlled, yet it is possible to undertake preventive measures that would lessen human misery. The measures that are undertaken before the disaster occurs and also after the disaster comes under the Disaster Management. The better we prepare for facing the disaster, the lesser is the effect of the disaster. It can be said that key to Disaster Management is Disaster Preparedness.

With the increase of population, the land that was once available to the rivers for flowing during the rainy season has become inhabited. This shrinking space for the river flow causes floods.

Rain and cyclones are determined by geographical factors. Human beings cannot do much to prevent a cyclone from moving over from the sea to the coastal areas. Disaster management, however, can help by warning people and shifting them to safer places well before the cyclone occurs.

In case of floods, for minimising the calamity, arrangements can be made beforehand to ensure that people along with their cattle are evacuated much before the rising waters submerge the villages. Crop failures do not occur as suddenly as an earthquake. If food grain supplies are rushed and distributed to the affected people rapidly, than there would be no cases of deaths due to malnutrition or starvation. Natural hazards cannot be controlled always but being prepared for them can play an important role in reducing misery that may make the hazard a disaster.

SOME COMMON DISASTERS

Earthquakes

The large plates of land, float over the oceans of molten rocks at times collide. The earth is composed of these plates. These have been moving and shifting for many thousand years. In this process, huge amount of energy is released resulting in tremors on the Earth's crust.



Fact File

At least 41 states are considered at moderate to very high earthquake risk. Scientists, geologists, and storm watchers work hard to predict major disasters and avert as much damage as possible. With all the technology available, it becomes easier to predict major storms, blizzards, cyclones, and other weather related natural disasters. But there are still natural disasters that come up rather unexpectedly, such as earthquakes, wildfires, landslides, or even volcanic eruptions.

On average, there are 800 tornadoes each year in the U.S. Tornadoes have occurred in all continental U.S. states.



Earthquakes also takes place in the oceans. In this case, huge waves race in the ocean, in some cases speed of waves is upto 8000 km/hr.

Places on earth that are located along faults are more prone to earthquakes. Faults are plains where the rocks are broken and have moved in some direction comparative to the other.

Huge damage of life and property take place in case of an earthquake where it is densely populated. Another term used for earthquake prone areas is seismic zone. If a dam is built in a seismic zone, it can be a real disaster, in case of a volcanic eruption.



Earthquake

Drought

Drought occurs when the ground water is used excessively and forests are cut continuously.

Excessive use of groundwater and deforestation causes droughts.

Drought takes place when an area does not get sufficient rainfall. Crop failure causes acute shortage of foodgrains. A drought may turn into a disaster where the people are already very poor. Droughts cause calamity not only by way of shortage of foodgrains but also scarcity of potable water for humans and the cattle.



Drought

Floods

Uncertainties of monsoons leads to flood. Ganga and Brahmaputra rivers cause maximum flood damage, but floods in India are not confined to Ganga or Brahmaputra rivers only. Humans contribute to the misery caused by floods by encroaching upon land that the river needs for flowing and expansion during the rainy season.



Flood

Cyclones

Difference in temperature leading to difference in pressure over land and sea gives birth to cyclones. Coastal regions of Odisha are most prone to cyclones. The high speed tidal waves lead to floods in the coastal areas. Even concrete buildings are often destroyed by the rage of the storm which is accompanied by the heavy rain.

Fact File

On average, there are 800 tornadoes each year in the U.S. Tornadoes have occurred in all 48 continental U.S. states



OTHER TYPES OF DISASTERS

Man-made disaster can be in multiple forms — polluting the air or water through deadly germs is just one example. Weapons of mass destruction can also create huge disasters.

Disasters occur through deliberate actions of misguided attacks are an example of man-made disasters. Air crash is a man-made disaster.

Nuclear explosions in Hiroshima and Nagasaki of Japan during the Second World War was a disaster caused deliberately by US forces.

The leakage of methyl iso-cyanate gas from the Bhopal plant in 1984 was also a man-made disaster. Thousands died soon after leakage. Even two decades after the tragedy, people could not get over from its side effects.

Accidents like fire caused by short circuiting, bombs in aeroplanes, collapse of building etc., are all man-made disasters that could have been prevented.

Let's Think

Do you think and rely why is nature of biggest source of Disasters?

How to Prevent Man-made Disasters

- We can prevent man-made disasters. If the buildings are built according to the prescribed by laws, there would be no collapses. Likewise, if fire fighting equipments are installed and safety measures are taken, even when fire breaks out, the damage to human beings would be minimum.
- Abiding by the rules is most important for installations like nuclear power plants.
- Nuclear bombing, rail and traffic accidents are examples of man-made disasters. Man-made disasters also include fire and germ warfare.
- International agreements already exist. What is needed is that nations follow the rules like not making and storing weapons of mass destruction.
- Factories Act prescribes safety conditions. If all manufacturers stick to those safety measures, there would be fewer industrial accidents.
- We cannot check the natural disaster, but the human misery can definitely be minimised. If we are prepared for a disaster, there would be minimum suffering and damages. Disasters like floods annihilate entire civilizations like the one in Indus Valley.
- If we take care, floods and drought can be prevented. Blindly cutting of trees reduces annual rainfall leading to soil erosion and landslides. In the process of industrialisation, ecological balance of nature must be kept in mind.
- In case of volcanic eruption, all agencies like the State and the people groups should come into action through coordinated efforts to rehabilitate the victims. Disasters like floods, droughts and volcanic eruptions do occur although with unpredictable frequency. If we have already prepared adequate Disaster Management Plans, we would be able to come into action rapidly.



Community Contingency Plans

- All disasters cannot be warded off. However, human misery due to disasters can be minimised through Community Contingency Plans.
- With the help of disaster management and precaution, damage to life and property can be reduced.
- First of all, potential danger is to be identified. The danger can be in the form of flood, a volcanic eruption, spread of an epidemic and earthquake.
- After that comes the preventive measures like erection of bunds to check inflow so that the gravity of the cyclonic waves is lessened.
- Government should keep in readiness, places where camps could be set for putting up the persons evacuated from their original residences. Proper arrangements must be made for their toilets, food, cattle and medical care.

Word Treasure

<i>Contingency</i>	:	Fortuitous occurrence.
<i>Cyclone</i>	:	Circular and violent.
<i>Disaster</i>	:	Adversity, Calamity.
<i>Drought</i>	:	Lack of rain.
<i>Hazard</i>	:	Risk, Danger.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

a. The shrinking space for the river causes.

i) Flood

ii) Earthquake

iii) Drought

iv) Cyclones

b. Which one of these is a natural disaster?

i) Flood

ii) Nuclear explosion

iii) Air crash

iv) Terrorist act

c. Which one of these is a man-made disaster?

i) Earthquake

ii) Flood

iii) Cyclones

iv) Fire

- d. Excessive use of groundwater and deforestation causes
- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| i) Flood | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Drought | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Earthquake | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Cyclones | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- e. 'Bhopal gas tragedy' occurred in
- | | | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|
| i) 1980 | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) 1984 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) 1998 | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) 2000 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- f. takes place when an area does not get sufficient rainfall.
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Flood | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) Drought | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Cyclone | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) Man-made disaster | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- g. Coastal regions of Odisha are most prone to
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| i) Floods | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) droughts | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) Cyclone | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) both (a) and (c) | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2. Write short answer for the following question.

- Name four natural disasters and three man-made disaster.
- Name one State each that is prone to disasters like flood, drought and cyclones.
- How does an earthquake occur?
- How can house collapse during rainy season be prevented?
- What are cyclones?
- Why do the rivers like Ganga and Brahmaputra cause maximum flood damage?



- What steps should we take in case of both man-made and natural disasters?
- Why is nature one of the biggest source of destruction?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Natural disasters are often the result of human actions. How can you prove the statement?
- How can we prevent man-made disaster?
- How can the damage to life and property be minimized in case of railway accidents?
- What can the students do in Community Contingency Plans?
- What are droughts? What are its effects?

4. Fill in the blanks.

- can occur in any part of the country at any time.
- The key to disaster management is disaster
- Rains and cyclones are determined by factors.



d. Coastal regions of are most prone to cyclones.

5. Write 'T' for true and 'F' for false statements.

1. The natural forces can be controlled.
2. The shrinking space for the river causes flood.
3. Earthquake can also take place in the oceans.
4. Terrorist attacks are an example of natural calamity.

6. Match the following.

Column A

- a. Drought
- b. Flood
- c. Cyclone
- d. Natural Hazards

Column B

- i) Drought, floods, earthquakes and cyclone.
- ii) Area does not get sufficient rainfall.
- iii) Uncertainties of monsoons.
- iv) Difference in temperature



Value Based Questions

1. What are the causes of natural disasters?
2. How are man-made disasters different from the natural disasters?

Activity Zone

Prepare a first aid kit after consulting a doctor or your class teacher with the help of shoe box.

FLOW CHART

Natural Hazards

- Droughts, floods, earthquakes and cyclones are natural hazards.
- Disaster management is an important issue for a number of countries.
- Rain and cyclones are determined by geographical factors.

Other Types Of Disasters

- Air crash is a man-made disaster.
- Nuclear explosion in Hiroshima and Nagasaki of Japan is one disaster.
- The leakage of methyl isocyanate gas from the Bhopal plant in 1984 is human disaster.
- Accidents like tire caused by short circuiting, bombed in aeroplanes is man-made disaster.

Some Common Disasters

- **Earthquakes**—The large plates of land. How over the oceans of molten rocks at times collide.
- **Drought**—It takes place when an area does not get sufficient rainfall.
- Excessive use of groundwater and deforestation causes drought.
- **Floods**—Uncertainties of monsoons leads to flood.
- Ganga and Brahmaputra rivers cause maximum food damage





Key Highlights

- ❖ Constitution
- ❖ Need for the Constitution
- ❖ Constitution making– a challenging task
- ❖ The Dowry Prohibition Act 1961
- ❖ Beginning of a new era
- ❖ Framing the Constitution
- ❖ Need for Law
- ❖ Preamble as the source of vision

Let's Start With

Most of you know that India became independent on August 15, 1947. But do you know why we celebrated Republic Day? January 26, 1950, is the day the Constitution of India came into effect. What was until then known as Union of India officially became the Republic of India. For 66 years now, the Indian Constitution has been the permanent instrument that ensures the working of the government system. The Constitution provides for a Parliamentary form of government which is federal in structure with certain unitary features. The constitutional head of the Executive of the Union is the President. As per Article 79 of the Constitution of India, the council of the parliament of the union consists of the President and two Houses known as the Council of States (Rajya Sabha) and the House of the People (Lok Sabha). Almost every aspect of our lives is governed by a set of rules.

WHAT IS CONSTITUTION?

The Constitution of a nation is a document which contains people's aspirations, values and ideals. It is considered very sacred. It is also the basis of all the laws according to which the nation is governed. It determines the role and responsibilities of the Central Government, the State Governments and the Local Bodies. It enlists the duties as well as the rights of the people.

There are three parts of the State, the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary. The Legislature creates the laws, the Executive implements them and the Judiciary punishes those who violate the laws.



BEGINNING OF A NEW ERA

26 January 1950 is the red letter day in the history of modern India. On this day, the Constitution of India came into force. From this day onwards, we began to govern ourselves according to the laws made by our elected representatives.

NEED FOR THE CONSTITUTION

Every country needs a Constitution for functioning of its government. The Constitution ensures that the government will not run according to the desire of any individual or a group of people, howsoever powerful they may be.

Before 15 August 1947, our country was governed by rules made by the British rulers. We did not have much power even in matters that immediately affected us. The right to vote was given only to a few selected adults. After independence, it was felt that the then existing laws could not meet our needs. So, a new Constitution was framed for the country.

A republic is different from a nation ruled by a foreign ruler. Now the power of the State vests in the people of India. No other country has any say in the laws that we make for our people. We are bound only by the Constitution. It is, therefore, our duty that we must respect our Constitution and be loyal to it. The Constitution of India has 395 Articles and 12 Schedules. At the time of inception, there were only nine Schedules.

A number of items concerning how we shall be governed are set in form of Articles. The Schedules are statements included in the Constitution to give a clear and detailed meaning to the Articles.

FRAMING OF THE CONSTITUTION

The Constitution of our nation was framed by an assembly of elected representatives. Elections to the Constituent Assembly were held in July 1946. The Constituent Assembly came into form soon after and its first meeting held on 9 December 1946. There were 389 elected members in the Constituent Assembly. These members were elected by the members of the provincial assemblies. Most of the members of the Constituent Assembly belonged to the Indian National Congress. There were also some members who belonged to other political parties. The members of the Muslim League did not take part in the proceedings of the Constituent Assembly.

The Constituent Assembly had representatives from almost all the political parties, communities and regions of India. It included some of the foremost men and women of India who had distinguished themselves in various walks of life. The best available legal brains in the nation were associated with the framing of the Constitution. The Assembly was fortunate to have several prominent political leaders who had for many years fought for the independence of the country. Dr. Rajendra Prasad, Jawaharlal Nehru, Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel and Maulana Azad were some of the great leaders of the Indian National Congress. Renowned persons like Dr. Shyama Prasad Mukherji, Frank Anthony



and Sardar Baldev Singh, Dr. H.P. Modi, were associated with the framing of the Constitution even though they were not members of the Indian National Congress. Dr. H.P. Modi and Frank Anthony represented the Parsees and the Anglo-Indians respectively. Constitutional experts like Alladi Krishnaswamy Ayyar, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, and K. M. Munshi were also members of the Constituent Assembly. The names of Mrs. Sarojini Naidu and Mrs. Vijaya Laxmi Pandit deserve special mention. The Constituent Assembly was thus representative of all cross-sections of the Indian people.

WORKING OF THE CONSTITUENT ASSEMBLY

Dr. Rajendra Prasad was **unanimously** elected the President of the Constituent Assembly.

Dr. B.R. Ambedkar was made the Chairman of the Drafting Committee.

The first meeting of Constituent Assembly was held on 9 December 1946, in the central hall of the Parliament.

The Drafting Committee studied the Constitutions of a number of countries such as France, Canada, Switzerland, USA, Australia, etc. The committee took their best features and adopted them. It also kept in view Indian's historical and cultural tradition. The best features of the existing constitutions gave our Constitution a unique face.

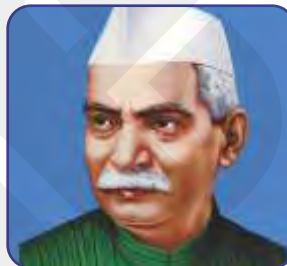
By February 1948, the Draft Constitution was ready. It was published in the leading newspapers of the country. Suggestions were sought from the people. The Drafting Committee studied the suggestions received and made necessary changes, in the original Draft.

On 4 November 1948, the Draft Constitution was presented to the Constituent Assembly. It was discussed in detail for about a year.

Then on 26 November, 1949, the Constitution was ultimately signed by the members of the Constituent Assembly. However, it came into effect only three months later. There is

a historical reason for this. On 26 January 1929 at Lahore Session, the Indian National Congress had adopted the attainment of 'Purna Swarajya' (Complete Independence) as its final objective.

In remembrance of this historic day, it was decided to enforce the Constitution with effect from 26 January, 1950. For the first time, in the year 1951, elections were held in accordance with the provision of the new Constitution. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected the first President of India and Jawaharlal Nehru became the first Prime Minister of the Indian Republic.



Dr. Rajendra Prasad



DR. B. R. AMBEDKAR
Chairman of the
Drafting Committee
of the Constitution



JAWAHARLAL NEHRU,
The First Prime
Minister of India



CONSTITUTION MAKING —A CHALLENGING TASK

The framing of a Constitution for a nation as big as India was a very difficult and challenging task. There are a number of diversities by way of religions, languages and cultures. Every aspect had to be kept in view while framing the Constitution. While unifying, due care and concern was to be shown to regional aspirations. It took two years, eleven months and eighteen days to finally pass the Constitution. A sum of Rs. 6.4 crores was spent on the Constituent Assembly during that period.

The Constitution proved a success. Whenever necessary, it has been amended in the interest of social justice and harmony.

The word 'Law' is derived from Latin word 'Lag' which means regulate, definite, stable and uniform. A law is equally applicable to all citizens. The rich and the poor are equal in the eyes of law. Law is a set of rules, obeying which helps to maintain harmony in society.

NEED FOR LAW

We need laws for the following reasons :

We need laws to carry our work smoothly.

We need laws for the welfare of individual as well as society.

We need laws for developing good habits and maintaining discipline.

We need laws to get the best out of our resources.

According to the Indian Constitution, the Central Government is authorised to make laws on 97 subjects. The State Government is empowered to frame laws on 66 subjects and both Governments can frame laws on 47 subjects.

The major subjects on which the Central Government frames laws are: Defence, Citizenship, Railways, Currency, Posts and Telegraphs and any other matter not listed in the category of State Laws and Concurrent Subjects.

The States can frame laws on subjects like Prison, Agriculture, Public, Health and Trade and Commerce within the State.

The Local Bodies can frame laws on Local water supply, Property tax, Local transport and other civic matters.

Meaning of Dowry

Dowry is a gift given by the parents of the bride at the time of the marriage of their daughter to the bridegroom and his family.

Meaning of Dowry as per Law

Gifts demanded by bridegroom or his parents from the parents of the bride at the time of marriage are called dowry. If gift is given voluntarily, it is not considered dowry.



Supreme Court



Evil Aspects of Dowry

- ✓ Bridegrooms and the parents do all kind of atrocities when their daughter-in-laws do not bring them the desired amount of dowry.
- ✓ The marriage ceremony becomes an occasion for sale and purchase.
- ✓ The parents of the daughter have to take debts to arrange for dowry.
- ✓ Often parents of the groom use unfair means to get dowry.
- ✓ Several girls remain unmarried as their parents are not in a position to arrange the dowry.
- ✓ Parents often resort to killing of baby daughters even before their birth.

Let's Think

Protection of women from Domestic Violence Act 2005 is aimed at providing protection to wife or female live-in partner from violence at the hands of the husband or male live-in partner or his relative.

THE DOWRY PROHIBITION ACT 1961

The Government of India took a very serious notice of the terrible consequences of the practice of dowry and passed the Dowry Prohibition Act in 1961. Demanding dowry was declared an offence. According to the act, the dowry seeker could be imprisoned for six months or fined upto rupees five thousand. This step did not prove successful.

In case of dowry death, the law provides for imprisonment for over seven years.

In 1983 Dowry Act was amended. According to this amendment, the person, i.e., the husband or the relative of the husband could be punished with life imprisonment with a fine of rupees fifteen thousand.

The laws framed by the Government regarding eliminating dowry have not proved effective. Daily we hear and read news of dowry deaths by various media.

There is an acute need for a strong movement against this evil practice. The sooner this evil practice ends, the better it would be for India's future.

Role of the Constitution in Determining the Legitimacy of the Law

Democratic States accept the right of the people to express their views on every action of the Government. Law is no exception. The condition is that dissent should be expressed in peaceful manner. Acts of violence must not be resorted to.

Prohibition

Prohibition implies the act of stopping by law to the manufacture, transportation and sale of alcoholic liquors except for medicinal purposes.

Constitutional Provisions on Prohibition (Article 47 under 'Directive Principles of State Policy): "The State shall try to bring about prohibition of the consumption except for medicinal purpose of intoxicating drinks and drugs which are injurious to health".



The issue of prohibition comes under the authority of the States i.e., the policy related to prohibition is to be followed by States.

Prohibition or Anti-Liquor Campaign

During the freedom struggle, anti-liquor campaigns were launched in different states. Gandhiji in this regard had said, “If I were appointed dictator for one hour for India, the first thing I would do would be to close without compensation all liquor shops.”

Consumption of liquor is a grave social evil. Liquor is intoxicating and under its influence, people lose their sense. Quarrels also take place sometimes among people. Consumption of excess liquor is also injurious to health.

THE PROHIBITION OF INQUIRY COMMITTEE (1956)

The Committee gave a number of suggestions. With a view to control the consumption of liquor, some states took some steps but the outcomes were not encouraging.

The State of Gujarat has achieved some success in enforcing the prohibition laws.

On the whole, it is to be said that the policy of prohibition has not been successful. It is a matter of serious concern, that some sections of society which boast of modernization, consider consumption of liquor a 'status symbol'.

Genuine and consistent efforts were required to get rid of social evils like dowry and use of intoxicants. In such issues, government efforts can yield fruitful results only when people are wide awake and cooperate with the government agencies.

PREAMBLE AS THE SOURCE OF VISION

The Preamble of the Constitution : It is the introductory statement that provides briefly the objectives of the Constitution. The Preamble provides guidance to the representatives of the people in their task. It gives expression to aspirations of the Indian people.

Every word of the Preamble has its importance. We must understand the complete meaning of these words and terms used in the Preamble.

We, the People of India : the Preamble of our Constitution commences with the words 'We, the people of India' — it refers that the Constitution derives its authority from the people of India. The final source of all power are the people of India.

India is Sovereign : Before independence, we were governed by the laws made by the British rulers. There is no such foreign control over us now. We can frame our laws without any external interference. Our head of the State is the President of India, who is elected and not appointed. The Sovereignty rests in the People of India who are the ultimate masters of their own destiny.

India is Democratic : The great thinker and president of USA, Abraham Lincoln (1861-65 A.D.) defined democracy as the 'Government of the People, by the People and for the People'. In our country, it is through our elected representatives that the State policies are made and implemented for the welfare of our people.



Elections are held every five years. The people of India, elect their representatives for the State Assemblies and the Parliament at the Centre. No tax can be levied on any citizen except through the authority of the Parliament, a State legislature or a local body.

India is a Republic : In a Republic system, no external authority has any say in the affairs of the country. Before independence, the Queen or King of Britain happened to be the Constitutional Head of India. But with the introduction of our Constitution, we have become a Republic and our elected representatives in the Parliament and State legislatures have equal freedom.

India is Secular : In India, the laws of the State do not show discrimination for any particular religious group. The freedom to follow a faith of one's choice is guaranteed in the Constitution. In terms of employment, no restrictions can be imposed on the basis of a person's religion.

India is Socialist : Our Constitution aims at establishing a socialist society. The Constitution aims at providing measures through which economic disparities may be diminished. It does not mean that government intends to make the rich people poor. The intention is to raise the standard of living of people who are economically backward. There are special provisions in the Constitution that allow the Government to make legislation for protecting the interests of the weaker sections of the society.

Economic justice is ensured through provisions like minimum wage and equal opportunities for employment in commercial organisations.

Political justice means that there is liberty to have any political views but they must not go against the interest of the nation as a whole. Similarly, there is the freedom to vote for any recognized political party in the country.

Liberty and Equality : The Constitution provides that no citizen shall be deprived of his freedom. There can be no detention without proper authority of law. There is also the freedom of expression and speech. Equal opportunities are ensured to all citizens for their fullest development.

Fraternity : The Constitution intends to promote the feeling of mutual brotherhood among all citizens.

Liberty, Fraternity and Equality are inter-related. It is only when all citizens are free and bound by a feeling of brotherhood that there can be equality.

Similarly, only citizens with equal freedoms and equal rights can have a feeling of brotherhood for each other. Equality before law and a feeling of brotherhood for each other alone, can ensure that there will be real freedom.

The Constitution provides that all men are born equal and free. So it guarantees to them these basic freedoms.

MEANING OF SECULARISM

Secularism denotes equal regard for the religious sentiments of all people. All people



have the freedom to follow any religion in India. Secularism means that all are free to profess or preach the faith of their liking.

Dr. B. R. Ambedkar, the principal architect of the Constitution, was of the view that, "Secular does not mean that the State shall not take into consideration the religious sentiments of the people. The Secular State means that the Parliament shall not impose any particular religion upon the people".

Secularism treats all religions on equal footing and accepts freedom of religion.

Secularism believes in religious co-existence and people following different religions can live side by side.

CONSTITUTIONAL PROVISIONS: SECULARISM IN FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS

Regarding secularism, the following Articles exist in the Constitution of India :

Article 15 : The State does not discriminate against any citizen on grounds of any religion. All citizens have equal access to shops, tanks, wells and public places.

Article 25 (i) : All citizens are equally free to follow any religion of their choice.

Article 27 : No person can be made to pay any tax for the promotion of any religion.

Article 28 (i) : No religious instruction can be provided in any educational institution wholly maintained out of state funds.

Article 29 (i) : On religious ground no citizen can be denied admission to any educational institution maintained by the state or receiving aid out of state funds.

Article 30 : It gives right to establish educational institutions to religious and linguistic minorities based on religion or language. It also prohibits any discrimination in grant of aid to any educational institutions run by a religious minority.

FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS

Part III of the Constitution is devoted to Fundamental Rights. The following Fundamental Rights are guaranteed to all citizens:

Right to Equality (Articles 14 to 17)

Right to Freedom (Articles 19 to 22)

Right against Exploitation (Articles 23 and 24)

Right to Freedom of Religion (Articles 25 and 28)

Cultural and Educational Rights (Articles 29 to 30)

Right to Constitutional Remedies (Articles 32 and 35)

Right to Education (Articles 21A) : This Article was inserted in 2002. The original Article 45 was amended.

Right to Equality : India is a very large country. The people belong to various racial groups and follow different religious faiths. People from many nations came in the past and made India their permanent home. The colour of their skin is not the same but despite all these diversities, a common thread of being an Indian runs through them. Our



Constitution recognizes this and guarantees equality before law to all citizens irrespective of religion, caste, race, sex or place of birth. All citizens have equal access to public places including places of entertainment, hotels, wells, tanks, roads, ghats, bathing etc. No government agency is allowed to discriminate against any citizens in matters of employment. Similarly, while giving admission, school are not allowed to consider the religion or caste of the students. No person can practice untouchability against another citizen. Untouchability has been abolished by Law and anyone practising it can be prosecuted by the court of law and punished with imprisonment upto six months or a fine of Rs.500.

MARGINALISED COMMUNITIES AND THEIR WELFARE

The State Governments have to make a list of certain castes, who were victims of caste system and were considered untouchable in the past.

These castes are generally termed as 'Scheduled Castes'.

In addition to 'Scheduled Castes', there are also certain tribes that are considered as less advanced. These people have remained economically and educationally backward for centuries. They have been referred to as 'Scheduled Tribes'.

The Right to Equality does not prevent the State from making special provisions for the betterment and upliftment of people belonging to 'Scheduled Castes' or 'Scheduled Tribes'. In free India, provisions have been made to give them special support to enable them to come up to the level of the rest of the country, educationally and economically. Certain percentage of seats have been reserved for them in educational institutions as well as in selection for public appointments. These provisions have helped to secure substantial social justice for a large section of our people in accordance with the objectives set out in the Preamble as well as the Directive Principles of State policy.

Right to Freedom : This right is the basis of Indian democracy. It provides for seven freedoms: Freedom of speech and expression.

- ✓ Freedom to form unions and associations.
- ✓ Freedom to assemble peacefully without arms.
- ✓ Freedom to move freely all over the country.
- ✓ Freedom to settle in any part of the country.
- ✓ Freedom to practice any profession or carry on any occupation, trade or business.

Citizens can enjoy these freedoms only under certain limits and conditions. In fact, the freedom of speech is meaningful only when no one has the freedom to abuse.

All these freedoms have to be enjoyed with certain restrictions in social interest. We must enjoy our independence in a way that it does not obstruct the freedom of other citizens.

Right against Exploitation : In our society, all sections are not equally in a position to protect their rights. The Constitution provides that human beings cannot be sold as



slaves. The laws of the State protects children below 14 years of age from being employed in hazardous jobs that might have adverse effect on their future growth.

Right to Freedom of Religion : India is a secular state in which all religions are equal before the law. All citizens are free to profess the religion of their choice. They are free to construct places of worship like temples, mosques, gurudwaras and churches etc. Different religious communities can establish their own educational institutions.

Cultural and Educational Rights : India is a vast country having establish varied living styles. The Constitution allows groups of people, howsoever small, to preserve their language and culture.

Minorities based on religion and language have the right to set up and administer educational institutions. The State provides financial assistance to all institutions in an equal manner.

Right to Constitutional Remedies : This is the most important right among the Fundamental Rights. If any citizen feels that his right has been violated by another citizen or even an agency of the government, he or she can approach the High Court and the Supreme Court for seeking justice. These courts can enforce the Fundamental Rights guaranteed by the Constitution.



Facts File

Fundamental Rights have been borrowed from the constitution of the United States of America.

The constitution was framed by an elected constituent assembly.

The society can take care of the individuals only if the individuals take care of the society.

FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES

Without duties, there would be chaos everywhere. It is possible to enjoy rights only when others are performing their duties. In fact, duties and right go hand in hand. Society works on the principle- "He who takes, gives and he who gives, takes". The society can take care of the individuals only if the individuals takes care of the society.

Article 51 A

Articles 51 A deals with the Fundamental Duties of the citizens. These duties are as follows:

Respect for National Symbols : To abide by the Constitution and respect its ideas and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem.

Following Noble Ideas : To follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for Independence.

Keeping Sovereignty Intact : To protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of the nation i.e., India.



Defending the Nation : To defend the nation and ready to render services when called upon to do so.

Promoting Harmony : To promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending linguistic, religious and regional or sectional diversities; to leave out practices derogatory to the dignity of women.

Preserving Rich Heritage : To preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture.

Protection Environment : To protect and improve the natural environment including forests, rivers, lakes, wildlife and to have compassion for living creatures.

Developing Scientific Sprit : To develop humanism, scientific temper and the spirit of inquiry.

Protecting Public Property : To safeguard public property and condemn and avoid violence.

Striving Towards Excellence : To strive towards excellence in all fields of individual and collective activity so that the country constantly rises to higher levels of achievement.

Providing Opportunities for Primary Education : To provide opportunities for education to all children between the age of six and fourteen years.

Word Treasure

<i>local bodies</i>	:	Institutions created to look after civic affairs.
<i>intoxicating</i>	:	A drink that has an hallucinating effect.
<i>monopoly</i>	:	Exclusive or sole possession of some commodity.
<i>preamble</i>	:	Introductory part

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

a. The Constitution of India came into force on

i) 15th August

ii) 26 January

iii) 26th November

iv) 5th September

b. According to which article no person can be made to pay any tax for the promotion of any religion?

i) Article 15

ii) Article 25 (i)

iii) Article 27

iv) Article 30



c. Who defined 'democracy' as the 'Government of the people, by the people and for the people'?

i) Abraham Lincoln

ii) Karl Marx

iii) Mahatma Gandhi

iv) Aristotle

d. Which articles come under Right Against Exploitation?

i) Articles 14 to 17

ii) Articles 19 to 22

iii) Articles 23 to 24

iv) Articles 29 to 30

e. There were elected members in the constituent Assembly.

i) 369

ii) 389

iii) 379

iv) 489

f. The first meeting of constituent Assembly was held on

i) 4 December 1946

ii) 4 November 1948

iii) 9 December 1946

iv) 26 November 1949

g. The provides that no citizen shall be deprived of his freedom.

i) Fundamental rights

ii) Fundamental duties

iii) Constitution

iv) democracy

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- What is contained in the Constitution of a country?
- What is the meaning of dowry? What are its harmful effects?
- What are the characteristics of a Republic?
- Is India a sovereign?
- Name some persons who played an important role in framing our constitution.



- What steps should we take in case of both man-made and natural disasters?
- Why is nature one of the biggest source of destruction?

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Why did Constitution come into force from 26 January?
- Can government action alone eliminate social evils? Answer with suitable examples.
- What do you mean by secularism?
- Describe the Dowry prohibition Act 1961.
- Discuss about the article mention in the constitution of India.
- What are our fundamental duties?



4. Fill in the blanks.

- was the last British Viceroy of India.
- Law is given by superior authority and it must be obeyed.
- Right to education was inserted in the year

5. Write 'T' for true and 'F' for false statements.

- The Legislature implements the law.
- The Central Government frames Sales Tax Laws.
- A State is empowered to make law on the defence of the country.
- People belonging to some religions have special political rights.

6. Match the columns.

Column A

- 4 November 1948
- 26 January 1929
- July 1946
- 26 January 1950

Column B

- Election to the Constituent Assembly
- Constitution of India came into force
- Purna Swaraj
- Presentation of Draft Constitution to the Constituent Assembly.



Value Based Questions

- Why do we need laws?
- Why was the framing of constitution a challenging task for the government?

Activity Zone

Conduct debate on, 'Is law important or necessary for all or not?'

FLOW CHART

Constitution

- The Constitution of a nation is a document which contains peoples aspirations.
- It determines the role and responsibilities of the central Government.
- The legislature creates the laws.

Need For the Constitution

- Every country needs a Constitution for functioning of its government.
- Constitution was framed for the Country.
- Constitution of India has 395 Articles and 12 Schedules.

Framing of the Constitution

- The Constitution of our nation was framed by an assembly of elected representatives.
- There are 389 elected members in the Constituent Assembly.
- Most of the members of the Constituent Assembly belonged to the Indian National Congress.

Need For Law

- Needs laws to carry our work smoothly.
- Need laws for the welfare of Individual as well as society.
- Need laws for developing good habits and maintaining discipline.
- Need laws to get the best out of our resources.





Goals Our Constitution



Key Highlights

- ❖ Framing of Constitution
- ❖ Constitution's Features
- ❖ Fundamental Duties.
- ❖ The Preamble
- ❖ A case study of child labour

Let's Start With

The Constitution of a nation is a document which contains people's aspirations values and ideals. It is considered very sacred. It is also the basis of all the laws according to which the nation is governed. It determines the role and responsibilities of the Central Government, State Government and the local bodies. It enlists the duties as well as the rights of the people.

Legislature, Executive and Judiciary are the three parts of the State Legislature make the laws, Executive implements and Judiciary punish those who violate the laws.

FRAMING OF CONSTITUTION

26 January 1950 is the red letter in the history of modern India. On this day, the Constitution of India came into force.

On December, 1946, the Constituent Assembly started working. Dr Rajendra Prasad was appointed as its President. Dr B. R. Ambedkar was selected the Chairman of the Drafting Committee. The Constituent Assembly met for 165 days spread over a period of 2 years 11 months and 17 days. The Constitution was passed by the Assembly on November 26, 1949, and came into effect on January 26, 1950. Dr B R Ambedkar, in his concluding speech to the Constituent Assembly said, '...What does social democracy mean? The Constitution means a way of life which recognizes liberty, equality and fraternity.... Liberty cannot be divorced from equality, equality cannot be divorced from liberty. Nor can liberty and equality be divorced from fraternity.'

There were 389 elected members in the Constituent Assembly. These members were elected by the members of the provincial assemblies. Most of the members of the Constituent assembly belonged to the Indian National Congress. All members belonged



to the other political parties. The members of the Muslim League did not take part in the proceedings of the Constituent assembly.

'The Constituent Assembly declared its firm and solemn resolve to proclaim India as an Independent, Sovereign Republic and to draw up for her future governance a Constitution'.

Thus, the values that inspired the nationalist movements became the foundation of India's democracy.

THE PREAMBLE

The Constitution philosophy of India is embedded in the Preamble. A Preamble is like an introduction in which the basic aims

Preamble : An introductory statement of the Constitution stating its aims and philosophy and objectives of the Constitution are mentioned. The Constitution of most of the democratic countries begins with a Preamble. However, it must be remembered that the Preamble is not a part of the Constitution and is not enforceable in a court of law. In this section, we will discuss the main features of our Preamble.

We, The People of India, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a **Sovereign, Socialist, Secular, Democratic Republic** and to secure to all its citizens :

Justice, social, economic and political;

Liberty, of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship;

Equality of status and of opportunity; and to promote among them all

Fraternity assuring the dignity of the individual and the unity and integrity of the Nation;

In our Constituent Assembly this twenty-sixth day of November, 1949, do **Hereby adopt, enact and Give to ourselves this Constitution.**

Sovereign

The Preamble declares India as a Sovereign country. It means that India is free from external control, runs its own government and formulates its own foreign policy. Being a sovereign state, India has framed her own Constitution.

Socialist

In 1976, the words 'Socialist', 'Secular', and 'Unity and Integrity of the Nation' were added to the Preamble by the 42nd Amendment. The word *socialist* was added to recognize the need to bring about economic and social equality along with political equality.

Secular

The word 'secular' highlights the non-existence of religious bias in the country. All religions are treated with equal respect and people belonging to all the religions enjoy similar rights.



Democratic

The word 'democratic' connotes that, in India, people will enjoy equal political rights. They elect their rulers who would be accountable to the people.

Democracy also means political, social and economic democracy. In fact, for the success of political democracy, social and economic democracy are important.

Republic

The Preamble also states that India is a *Republic* which means that the Head of the State, i.e. the President, is elected by the people and is not a hereditary ruler.

CONSTITUTION'S FEATURES

Federalism

There are two levels of governments, *viz.*, the union government and the state governments. Both sets of governments have their powers defined by the Constitution.

In India, there is a division of power between the Centre and the states guaranteed by the Constitution. The Constitution is supreme. The state draws its authority from the Constitution. Each state enjoys certain independence in exercising powers on subjects mentioned in the state list. Subjects of national concern are mentioned in the Union List. There are some subjects which are common concern to both the Central and the state governments and these are included in the Concurrent List.

Parliamentary Form of Government

India has a parliamentary form of government because here people elect representatives to a central assembly, and they legislate or make laws and exercise political authority on behalf of the people. The assembly of elected representatives is called the Parliament. The elected representatives are chosen by the citizens of the country. Also, every citizen of the country irrespective of any differences, can contest the elections.

Separation of Powers

There are three organs of the state—the **legislature** that frames laws; the **executive** that executes these laws; and the **judiciary** that resolves disputes and maintains order. To prevent the misuse of power, the Constitution has prescribed the functions of each organ. There is a balance of power between these three organs as each checks the other. No organ can exercise absolute authority.

Secularism

The word 'secular' clearly indicates that all the people have complete freedom to follow, preach or practice any religion. A secular state does not establish any religion as the official religion of the country and does not favour any particular religion. Nor does it discriminate against people on the basis of the religion they follow. There is no official religion in India, as we find in some countries like Saudi Arabia, Iran or Pakistan.



Let's Think

Go to any railway reservation counter or places where bills or other payments are made. You will see that there are separate queues for elderly people and women. In buses run by state authorities, there are seats reserved for the handicapped and also for women passengers. Should these facilities be provided? Do these special provisions violate the Right to Equality?

The main purpose behind the Constitution's aim to make secularism a mandatory governing principle for Indian democracy is:

- to bring into effect appropriate legislations and legal restraints to prevent one community from dominating other communities;
- to implement legislations and measures preventing some members from dominating others of the same community;
- to exercise self-restraint and caution from giving preferential treatment to any particular religion;
- to protect the religious freedom of every individual citizen.

Fundamental Rights

The Constitution also lays down effective procedures for the enforcement of these Fundamental Rights to guard against the misuse of state power.

The ideals of our Constitution can be beneficial for the people of the country only when they are translated into laws or rights. Hence, some rights, which are fundamental to our lives, have been guaranteed by the Constitution of India as the **Fundamental Rights**. These rights are fundamental because these are **basic human rights**. All Constitutions of the world are influenced by human rights.

Our Constitution provides for seven Fundamental Rights which translates the ideals of equality, liberty and justice into basic rights. They are:

Right to Equality

The Constitution guarantees equality of all persons before law and equal protection by the law. Due to the existence of various kinds of inequalities in our society, the Right to Equality assumes a great deal of importance. The State cannot discriminate against a citizen on grounds of religion, caste, sex or place of birth. The Constitution also abolishes the practice of untouchability, which is an extreme form of social discrimination. The Constitution, however, allows the State to make special provisions such as reservations for Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes.



Child Labour

Right to Freedom

Freedom is a basic human right and a very significant element of democracy. The Right to Freedom guarantees six basic freedoms to the Indian citizens as follows :

- Freedom of speech and expression,
- Freedom to assemble peacefully and without arms,
- Freedom to form associations and unions,
- Freedom to move freely throughout the country,
- Freedom to reside and settle in any part of the country,
- Freedom to practice any profession or to carry on any occupation, trade or business.
- Citizens can enjoy their freedoms only under certain limits and conditions. In fact, freedom of speech is meaningful only when no one has freedom to abuse.



Freedom of speech

Right against Exploitation

Our Constitution recognizes the dignity of the individual and protects her/him against any form of exploitation.

- The Constitution prohibits trafficking in human beings. (Traffic here means selling and buying human beings for immoral purposes.)
- It also prohibits *begaar* or forced labour which is done without any wage in return.
- Finally, the Constitution prohibits the employment of children below the age of fourteen in any factory, mine or in any other hazardous job.



Roosevelt Declaration US First Lady Eleanor Roosevelt with the Spanish version of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights

Right to Freedom of Religion

The ideal of secularism is based on the idea that the State has to be neutral and impartial in dealing with all religions. The Constitution guarantees the Right to Freedom of Religion, according to which all religions are equal before the State and no religion will be given preference over the other. Every person has the right to practise and propagate the religion she or he believes in.

Right to Cultural and Education

The makers of our Constitution have provided written guarantees to the rights of the **minorities**. The Cultural and Educational Rights guarantee the following to the minorities :

- Any section of the Indian people have the right to conserve their script, language and culture.



- Admission to any educational institution funded by the government shall not be denied on the grounds of religion, caste, region or language.
- Every section of society has the right to establish and administer educational institutions of its choice.

Right to Constitutional Remedies

The Constitution has not only granted rights to the citizens, it has also given citizens legal sanctions and legal remedies in case of their violation. In order to ensure that our rights are respected by the government, the Constitution makes provision for a special right called the **Right to Constitutional Remedies**. This is a Fundamental Right and makes other rights effective. By this right, citizens are empowered to approach the court if any of these Fundamental Rights are denied to them.

Right to Education

Right to Education is the latest addition in the list of our Fundamental Rights. This historic law came into being on April 1, 2012 after an announcement by India's Prime Minister Dr Manmohan Singh. According to this Right, every child in India in the age group of 6-14 is entitled to free and compulsory education. As per the Act, private educational institutions need to reserve 25 per cent of the seats for children from the weaker sections of the society. This Right will go a long way in helping us improve the literacy rate.

Human Rights as Fundamental Right

The Fundamental Rights of India are basic human freedoms, which every citizen enjoys for a proper development of personality and for living peacefully and harmoniously in society. These rights apply universally to all citizens, irrespective of race, place of birth, religion, caste, creed, colour or gender. These rights are also enforceable by the courts of law.

The essence of the Fundamental Rights is based on the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, which was adopted by the United Nations General Assembly on December 10, 1948. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights is a charter of 30 articles that establish a common standard of human right achievement for all peoples and all nations. It starts with the words, "All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights." The Declaration served as the foundation for a growing number of national laws, international laws, and treaties, as well as protection and promotion of human rights.

A Case Study of Child Labour

In the year 2005, one of the largest ever raids in the country, around 400 child labourers were rescued by the police, in coordination with voluntary organisations, from Madanpura in central Mumbai. The rlf rescued children were employed in zari, leather and steel workshops, and came from Bihar, Uttar Pradesh and even Nepal. The police arrested 42 employers.

As the police began their rescue operations, several hundred children were forced to run away by their t employers. Members of the rescue operation recounted tales of children being made to sit silently in ' locked rooms, hidden in sacks or stowed away in lofts.

Intal Sheikh (5), a sick-looking malnourished child said that his employer had hidden him and his brother in a loft. "When the police came, they grabbed me but my brother is still there in the room." Intal hails from Darbhanga district of Bihar.

Although child labour has been declared illegal, still many factories and industries employ children as labourers. Sporadic raids have done little to clamp down this practice.



Fundamental Duties. Unlike the Fundamental Rights, Fundamental Duties are not legally enforceable. The following are the fundamental duties that every citizen must follow:

- (a) to abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals and institutions, the National Flag and the National Anthem;
- (b) to cherish and follow the noble ideals which inspired our national struggle for freedom;
- (c) to uphold and protect the sovereignty, unity and integrity of India;
- (d) to defend the country and render national service when called upon to do so;
- (e) to promote harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities; to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women;
- (f) to value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture;



Fact's File

- ❖ December 10, the adoption of universal Declaration, is commemorated all over the world as Human Rights Day.
- ❖ This day is observed by individuals, community and religious groups, human rights organizations, parliaments, governments and the United Nations.

- (g) to protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers, and wildlife, and to have compassion for living creatures;
- (h) to develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform;
- (i) to safeguard public property and to abjure violence;
- (j) to strive towards excellence in all spheres of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavor and achievement.

Let's Think

Surprisingly, the biggest violator of the Employment of Manual Scavengers and Construction of Dry Latrines (Prohibition) Act, 1993 is the Indian Railways as it employs manual scavengers to clean the excreta dropped from the toilets of the trains. There are also many municipalities that still run public dry-toilets. Do you think you can do something to help India get rid of manual scavenging for good?



- preamble* : an introductory statement of the constitution stating its aim and philosophy.
- Secularism* : the principles of treating every religion equally.
- Fundamental Rights* : Some basics human rights, guaranteed by our Constitution.
- Fundamental Duties* : Duties specified in the Constitution which every citizen should fulfil.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The Chairman of the drafting committee of the Indian Constitution was
- i) Dr Rajendra Prasad ii) Sarojini Naidu
- iii) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru iv) Dr B. R. Ambedkar
- b. The legislative organ of the state
- i) makes constitutional amendments
- ii) frames laws
- iii) maintains order
- iv) executes the laws
- c. The number of Fundamental Rights guaranteed to the citizens of India
- i) eight ii) six
- iii) seven iv) ten
- d. The function of the judiciary is:
- i) to make laws ii) to enforce laws
- iii) to interpret laws iv) All of the above

2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- a. Who was the President of Drafting Committee?
- b. Who was the chairman of the Drafting Committee?
- c. In how many days our constitution has been completed?
- d. What is the preamble of Constitution?
- e. What is Federalism?



Are you free to do whatever you want? Who or what curtails your freedom? Is it good or bad for the society? Give near on.

3. Answer the following question in 60-80 words .

- Describe in brief how our Constitution came into existence.
- How did the values that inspired the nationalist movements become the foundation of Indian democracy? Elaborate your view in the light of the guiding principles of our Constitution.
- What is the purpose of our Preamble?
- What objectives were kept in mind before the Preamble was drafted?

4. Identify the feature of the Constitution from the following statements.

- Defend the country when required.
- There are special provisions such as reservations for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.
- The President is elected by the people.
- There is no official religion in India.

5. State whether the following statements are true or false.

- The philosophy of the Constitution of India is embedded in the Preamble.
- The words 'Secularist', 'Secularism' and 'Unity and Integrity of the nation' were added to the Preamble by the 44th Amendment Act.
- In India, the President is elected by people through the exercise of their right to vote.
- The legislature, the executive and the judiciary are three organs of the state.

6. Fill in the blanks with appropriate terms or phrases.

- Dr. Rajendra Prasad was appointed as the of the Constituent Assembly.
- The word connotes that, in India, people will enjoy equal political rights.
- The elected representatives of the Parliament are chosen by of the country.
- A state does not establish any religion as the official religion of the country.



Value Based Questions

“All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights.” The Universal Declaration of Human Rights begins with these words. From your personal experience and observations of happenings around you, would you say that these words are true? Why/Why not?

Activity Zone

Form groups of 4-5 and conduct a research on the children of weaker sections of society near your home or school. Find out whether these children attend school or not. If they don't, what are the reasons for their not doing so? How can you help them? Share your findings in class and compare all the information collected. You could have a discussion on it as well.





The Judiciary



Key Highlights

- ❖ The Judiciary in India
- ❖ Access to the Courts
- ❖ Independent Judiciary
- ❖ Powers of the Judiciary
- ❖ Importance of Judiciary

Let's Start With

We live in a society and the society consists of a variety of people. Although every one likes to live in peace but still there are occasions when people quarrel or fight among themselves. When quarrels and fights take place, none of the parties involved in the dispute is willing to accept its fault. Who is the Wrong doer, can be decided only by some authority other than the parties into the dispute. Hence, the need for courts of Justice.

We have already studied about the two organs of the Indian government—the Legislature and the Executive. The Legislature makes laws and the Executive implements them. But what happens when there are disputes between individuals living in society or between the government and the citizens, or even between one level of government and another? Who resolves these disputes? Who acts as a guardian of our Constitution? It is the **third organ** of a democratic government—the **Judiciary**. Let us learn about its role and importance.

The Parliament and State Assemblies are law-making bodies and their laws affect the citizens. If a citizen feels that the law violates his fundamental rights guaranteed by the Constitution.

THE JUDICIARY IN INDIA

India has an integrated and unified judiciary. The **Supreme Court**, which is also called the apex court, is situated at the top of our judicial structure. Below the Supreme Court, there are High Courts in the states, District Courts and other courts at the local level.

The Supreme Court is the highest court of justice in the country. It has the power to supervise and control the entire judicial system in India.



At present, the Supreme Court of India has a chief Justice and 25 other judges.

The Judiciary has several functions:

- It applies the laws of the country to every citizen.
- It safeguards the rights of citizens and protects them from violation of their rights.
- It resolves disputes and awards punishment to the guilty.

TYPES OF CASES

Civil and Criminal Cases

The cases tried in our courts are of two types:

1. **Civil cases**—Those concerned with property, construct, damage to goods in transit act are called civileages. It deal with disputes which concern property, money, marriage, inheritance and land. Civil cases can be settled outside the court. The verdict of the court is restricted to injunctions or payment of compensation. Civil cases begin with the lodging of a First Information Report (FIR) with the police.
2. **Criminal cases**—The cages involving theft robbery, rape and murder are called criminal case. These cases may lead to more severe punishment. In the case of criminal cases, a petition has to be filed before the relevant court.



Fact File

- ❖ The Calcutta High Court is the oldest High Court in India. It was established in February 1862. It is a common High Court for West Bengal and Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
- ❖ The Guwahati High Court is common for the seven eastern states of Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Meghalaya, Manipur, Tripura, Nagaland and Mizoram.

POWERS OF THE JUDICIARY

Supreme Court

India has a single judicial system for the entire country connected by a number of courts with the Supreme Court, the head of the entire judicial system. The Supreme Court supervises the lower courts such as the High courts and other subordinate courts. Our constitution presently provides for 34 judges at the Supreme Court.

The Supreme Court has been given various powers. Some of these include:

- Transferring any civil or criminal case from of State High Court to another State High Court or from a subordinate the court to another State High Court.
- Withdrawing and disposing any case pending before the High Court.
- Initiating international commercial argument or disagreement.
- Review its own judgement or order in a civil or criminal proceeding.



Original Jurisdiction

The Supreme court hears some cases for the first time directly, if any individual feels that an action by the individual or State violates his fundamental Rights he can directly approach the supreme Court. The Supreme Court also hears disputes involving any question of law or act between the Union and the States or the States among themselves.

Appellate Jurisdiction

The Supreme Court is also a court where appeals are filed. The judgement of a lower court may not satisfy some people. Thus, they can appeal to the Supreme Court to review the decisions made by the lower court. The Supreme Court has the power to re-examine the case.



Supreme Court of India

Advisory Jurisdiction

The President of India can consult the Supreme Court in any matter of public importance for advice. He may also refer any Bill passed by the Parliament to the Supreme Court for advice.

The President, however, is not bound to the advice of the Supreme Court.

Court of Record

The Judgements of the Supreme Court are quoted by lawyers while pleading cases before other courts. The Judgements of the Supreme Court are given a great weight and regarded as case law by the lower courts throughout the country.

Guardian of the Constitution

The Supreme Court upholds the Constitution by curbing any anti-constitutional law passed by the government.

Guardian of Fundamental Rights

The Supreme Court protects the fundamental rights of citizens. It can issue writs to people infringing any fundamental right of a citizen. The citizens can approach the Supreme Court directly for the protection of their Fundamental Rights.

High Court

There are provisions in constitution for a High Court in each state. These can be a common High Court for name than are State or Union Territories.

The High Court is the next level in the judiciary of India. It is the highest level of judicial administration in the state. Every state has a High Court.



The Bombay High Court. It was inaugurated on August 14, 1860

Jurisdiction

The High Courts of the states have three types of jurisdictions.

- Under the **original jurisdiction**, the High Court judges cases regarding protection of fundamental rights and disputes related to state elections.
- **Appellate jurisdiction** of the High Court is the power to hear appeals in civil and criminal cases, against the decisions of lower courts in the State.

- **Supervisory jurisdictions** of the High Court gives it the authority to supervise the working of all subordinate courts under its jurisdiction. The High Court is also a **Court of Record**.



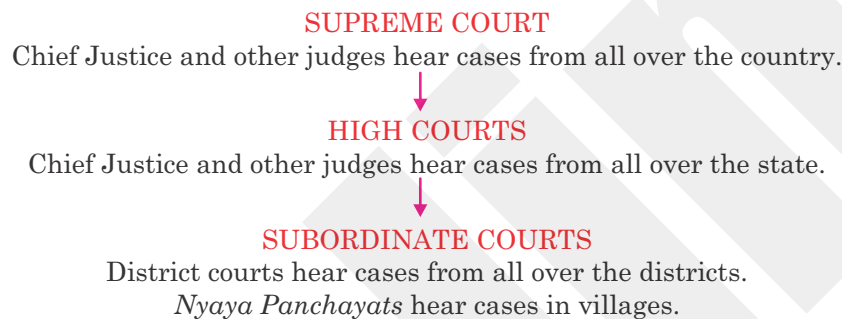
Fact File

In 2002, in a Public Interest Litigation (PIL) filed by industrialist and MP Navin Jindal, the Union Cabinet approved of an amendment in the Constitution which allowed all non-government organizations and even individuals to display the Indian flag throughout the year.

Subordinate Courts

In each state, there are courts under the High Court, known as subordinate courts.

- The highest court for civil cases is that of the **District Judge**. This court hears appeals filed against decisions of the lower courts. Subordinate judges and *munsifs* deal with civil cases at a lower level.
- The highest court for criminal cases is that of the **Sessions Judge**. Cases of murder, physical injury and dacoity are heard here. At times, the District Judge also works as a Sessions Judge. This court can award capital punishment, or the death sentence, after the High Court approves of it.
- At the village level, the judicial functions are performed by the *Nyaya Panchayat*.



ACCESS TO THE COURTS

Lok Adalats and Public Interest Litigation

Every Indian citizen has an easy access to the courts. If they feel that their rights are violated, they can approach the court for justice. However, it is difficult for the poor to get justice as the legal procedure involves a lot of money, time and paperwork. For a poor person who is not literate enough to understand the legal formalities of a case and whose family depends on a daily wage, the idea of going to court to get justice often seems inaccessible. In order to reach the deprived, the Parliament enacted the Legal Services Authorities Act, 1987. It provides for settlement of disputes through Lok Adalats. These are voluntary agencies that are monitored by the State Legal Aid and Advice Boards. The main objective of Lok Adalats is to provide speedy justice to parties through amicable settlements, free of cost. They have proved to be a successful alternative forum for resolving disputes.

PIL or **Public Interest Litigation** is filed by an individual or a group of people in the Supreme Court or High Court. PILs are filed when public interests are undermined or not given attention by any government action. The court admits PILs only when it is satisfied that these cases are for public good.

IMPORTANCE OF JUDICIARY

The Judiciary has great importance in a democracy because:

- It guarantees justice to the citizens.
- It keeps a check on the powers of the government.
- It safeguards the federal character of the country by resolving disputes between the Centre and the state or between states.
- It protects the Fundamental Rights of citizens.
- It acts as the custodian of the Constitution.



Lok Adalat

Let's Think

Do you think it is desirable for the government to ban news channels or newspapers from airing or printing news concerning acts of corruption or other negative actions of any minister or high-ranking government official? Can we still have true democracy?



INDEPENDENT JUDICIARY

An independent and powerful judiciary is essential for the successful working of a democracy. The independence of judiciary is ensured through various ways by the Constitution:

- The Judiciary is neither a part of the Executive or the Legislature nor under their control.
- The judges of the Supreme Court and the High Courts are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister and in consultation with the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court on the basis of an established procedure.
- Once appointed, the judges cannot be removed easily, as impeaching a judge is as difficult as impeaching a President.
- They are appointed for a fixed period and their salaries, emoluments, service conditions and other allowances cannot ordinarily be changed or reduced.

Hence, the Indian Judiciary acts as one of the most powerful judicial structures in the world.



Word Treasure

- Judiciary* : the organ of the government which upholds the Constitution and resolves disputes.
- Original jurisdiction* : power of courts to hear cases directly
- Lok adalat* : A court where disputes are settled by mutual consent of the dispute parties
- Linger on* : to delay.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. The oldest High Court in India is located in
- i) Chennai ii) Hyderabad
- iii) Delhi iv) Kolkata
- b. The High Court that is common for all the seven states of the Northeast is located in
- i) Aizawl ii) Imphal
- iii) Guwahati iv) Shillong
- c. Which of the following is a Subordinate Court?
- i) District Court ii) Court of Sub-Judges
- iii) *Munsif Court* iv) all of these,
- d. At the village level, the judicial functions are performed by the
- i) *Nyaya Panchayat* ii) *Gram Panchayat*
- iii) *Munsif Court* iv) *Lok Adalat*
- e. Civil cases at a lower level are dealt with by the
- i) Sessions Judge ii) Magistrate
- iii) District Judge iv) *Munsif*
- f. The highest civil court in a district is the court of the
- i) District Judge ii) Subordinate Judge
- iii) Sessions Judge iv) *Munsif*



2. Write short answer for the following questions.

- Which is the highest Court of Justice in the Country?
- What qualifications are necessary for being appointed a Judge of the Supreme Court?
- What is the advisory role of the Supreme Court?
- What do you mean by first Information Report?



Do you think it is very tiresome and costly to get justice in India? Give reasons and suggest some measures to improve the situations.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Present a brief outline of the Indian Judiciary and explain why the Supreme Court is called the apex court.
- The Judiciary in India has several functions. What are they?
- What is the Original Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court?
- Which are the two kinds of Subordinate Courts in the districts? What are their functions?

4. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words or phrases.

- The Judiciary acts as the of the Constitution.
- are filed when public interests are undermined by any governmental action.
- The first Lok Adalat met in Delhi in
- In a Subordinate Court, criminal cases are dealt with by

5. Give reasons.

- Lok Adalats have been introduced.
- Judges cannot be removed easily.
- We have an integrated Judiciary in India.
- All the decisions of the Supreme Court are kept as a record.

6. Read the following statements and state whether they are true or false.

Correct the false statements.

- Only the Supreme Court has the power to punish for causing contempt of court.
- Disputes that arise from cases pertaining to the election of the President are settled by the Supreme Court.
- The total number of High Courts in India is less than the number of states.
- The District Judge also works as a Sessions Judge.



Value Based Questions

What is your opinion about judicial activism? Do you think it is necessary to maintain the basic values of democracy or is it detrimental for the latter?



Activity Zone

Judicial activism is one of the hotly debated subjects in the media and even among common people today. The term is used to imply too much of promptness shown by our judiciary in handling issues of public interests and concerns, often leading to a judicial authority's intervention in and verdicts on ordinary, commonplace matters. Collect information on some recent instances of it from various newspapers, magazines, periodicals, etc.

FLOW CHART

Functions of the Judiciary

Supreme Court

- Chief Justice and other judges hear cases from all over the country
- Settles disputes between:
 - the Government of India and one or more states
 - the Government of India and one or more states on the one side and one or more states on the other between one state and another
- Cases dealing with the violation of Fundamental Rights
- Cases pertaining to the election of the President and the Vice-President.
- Hear and decide appeals against the judgement of High Courts or any other court
- Court of Record

High Court

- Chief Justice and other judges hear cases from all over the State
- Have three types of jurisdictions
 - Under **Original Jurisdiction**, it has the power to issue orders called writs to any person or authority within its jurisdiction against the violation of the fundamental rights of citizens
 - Can also try civil and criminal cases
 - Under **Appellate Jurisdiction** can hear appeals on civil and criminal cases against the decisions of lower courts within the state
 - Has the authority to supervise the working of all subordinate courts under its jurisdiction
- Court of Record
- Power to punish for causing contempt of court

Subordinate Courts

- The highest civil court in a district is the District Court
- **District Courts** hear cases from all over the district
- **Subordinate Judges** and Munsifs deal with civil cases at a lower level
- Criminal cases are dealt with by the **Sessions Judge**
- At times, the District Judge also works as a Sessions Judge
- Magistrates can also hear criminal cases
- The District Court hears appeals against the judgement of a lower court
- *Nyaya Panchayats* hear cases at the village level

Different Branches of the Legal System

Civil Cases

- Deal with matrimonial disputes, property disputes, etc.
- Can be settled outside the court
- The verdict of the court is restricted to injunctions or payment of compensation

Criminal Cases

- Deal with crimes which harm the entire society such as robbery, adulteration, forgery, murder, etc.
- May lead to more severe punishments

Importance of Judiciary

- Guarantees justice to the citizens
- Keeps a check on the powers of the government
- Safeguards the federal character of the country by resolving disputes between the Centre and the State or between States
- Protects the Fundamental Rights of the citizens
- Acts as the custodian of the Constitution





Police and Human Rights



Key Highlights

- ❖ The Role of Police
- ❖ Role of the Courts
- ❖ The Public Prosecutor

Let's Start With

Ali's father, Mr Hussain, owned an electronic goods shop. One day, when Ali came back from school, his mother looked very upset. She told him that someone had broken into his father's shop at night and stolen mobile phone sets, DVD players and i-pods worth thousands of rupees. 'Where is Abba now?' asked Ali. 'He has gone to lodge an FIR at the Sector 20 police station,' his mother replied. 'What is an FIR Ammi? Why did he go to Sector 20 police station, when we stay in Sector 17?' asked Ali. Let us answer his questions in this chapter.

When Mr. Hussain went to the Police Station, an FIR was filed and the police started investigation of the case of robbery by visiting his shop, questioning the nearby shopkeepers and other people.

The police suspected that a young employee, who had been scolded for coming late and being rude to customers, might have been behind the theft. The police collected fingerprints and other evidence related to the crime. The case was to be tried before the Sessions Judge or Additional Sessions Judge.

THE ROLE OF POLICE

The Police Act of 1861 visualised the role of the police as a mere law enforcement agency. The National Police Commission (1978) suggested that the police should assume a service oriented role of which law enforcement is only a part. It further pointed out that due recognition should be given the police station at the basic unit of contact between the people and the **police**.

Let's Think

How can citizens help the police in performing its duties efficiently?



The police and the courts together help the government to maintain law and order in the country. A District Collector is responsible for law and order in a district. The Superintendent of Police and other police officers work under the District Collector.

Each district is divided into five or six sub divisions under the charge of a Deputy Superintendent of Police. Each police station has an Inspector of Police, sub-inspector, assistant sub-inspector and head constable.

An F.I.R. is filed at the police station under whose jurisdiction the crime has occurred. It is only when an F.I.R. is lodged, that investigation can begin.

What is an FIR?

FIR is the abbreviated form of First Information Report. It is the first information about an offence recorded by the police officer on duty. The information is given by the aggrieved person. The FIR is very important because on the basis of the FIR, the police starts its investigation. Denial to lodge an FIR is an illegal act.

Where and how to file an FIR

A step-by-step procedure is followed while filing an FIR:

- ❖ The person who has to file an FIR has to go to the police station and meet the officer-in-charge.
- ❖ Then he narrates every detail related to the offence. This is recorded by the officer.
- ❖ The information given by the complainant is signed by her/him. The complainant has the right to ask for a copy of the FIR.
- ❖ The FIR is then entered in a book which is to be kept by the officer-in-charge.
- ❖ Once an FIR is filed, the case is registered and the investigation begins.



Fact File

The Honourable Supreme Court's Directive on FIR

- ❖ In February 2006, the Supreme Court directed that the police cannot deny registering an FIR on the grounds that the complaint is doubtful.
- ❖ Supreme Court held that a police officer should register a case on a complaint of an offence and the police could not pre-judge the issue. The police would have no other option other than to register a complaint.



There are two types of offences—**cognizable** and **non-cognizable**. The police can directly file an FIR in case of a cognizable offence. For non-cognizable offences, the police needs permission of the court to file an FIR.

During the investigation, the police is in control of the proceedings, till a **chargesheet** is filed. The investigating officer collects sufficient evidences relating to the facts of the case to prove the allegations against the accused. The written report that he prepares on the basis of his investigation is called the charge sheet. Once the charge sheet is prepared, the case goes to the court.

Functions of the Police

- ✓ The main function of the police is the maintenance of law and order.
- ✓ The police ensures prevention of crime and makes sure that a sense of security prevails in society.
- ✓ The police is also engaged in welfare functions like rendering help to the elderly people, women, children and the handicapped.
- ✓ Police investigations have to be conducted in accordance with law and with respect for human rights.

Point out the Human Rights violations committed by police and internalise the preventive measures for protection of peoples right.

ROLE OF THE COURTS

What is the role of the courts of delivering justice when crimes are committed? The police are responsible for maintaining law and order in the state but they cannot award punishment to the culprit. They can only arrest the person who is guilty when a crime is committed. The accused is then presented in a court of law.



Fact File

The supreme Court of India has laid down the following guidelines for the police to follow at the time of arrest and interrogation.

- ❖ The police is not allowed to torture anyone.
- ❖ The police cannot beat anyone during investigation.
- ❖ The police cannot inflict any form of punishment.



THE PUBLIC PROSECUTOR

A Public Prosecutor is a gazetted officer who has to play an unbiased and impartial role in order to help a fair judgement. He is called 'a Minister of Justice'. The duty of a Public Prosecutor is to support the court in finding out the facts. His duty is to place before the court the evidence, whether it is in favour of or against the accused. It is then the duty of the court to decide on the verdict.

In the court, the arguments of the accused and the defendant are heard carefully by the **Judges**.

The court can direct a police officer to arrest a person and produce him before the court by issuing a warrant, against him.

After a judgement, if one party is dissatisfied, then they can appeal to a higher court. From a District Court, a case can move up to the Supreme Court.

If the Sessions Judge awards a death sentence to the accused, then the High Court has the power to hear an appeal against it.

- ✓ Confessions during police custody cannot be used as evidence.
- ✓ A boy under 15 years of age and women cannot be called to the police station only for questioning.



Fact File

The following Fundamental Rights are guaranteed to every arrested person:

- ❖ The Right to be informed at the time of arrest.
- ❖ The Right to be presented before a magistrate within a day of arrest.
- ❖ Not to be ill treated during arrest.

Fair Trial

Every citizen is guaranteed a fair trial by the Constitution. The Constitution ensures fair trial as follows:

- a. The courts should give a copy of chargesheet and statements of witnesses.
- b. The trial should not be held in a secret location and should be held in the presence of the accused.
- c. Enough time should be given to question the witnesses.



- d. The accused can fight in his/her defence by presenting witnesses.
- e. An opportunity should be given to cross examine all the prosecution witnesses.
- f. Decisions should be taken by the judge on the basis of evidence.
- g. Judges should remain impartial and impart a fair verdict.

Human Rights

After understanding the concept of Human Rights and the institutions that protect human rights let us move to learn towards the role, function and accountability of police in a democracy. Observance and respect for Human Rights in the police process is a positive step towards people oriented police.

You will study in this unit the principle of rule of law, preventing arbitrary use of power and mandates of the police to protect and safeguards the rights of the citizens.

This unit will acquaint the learners with the code of conduct that governs the police in their everyday activities and the restrictions on use of force leading to human rights violations. It will also take you through the several initiative on police reforms.

Word Treasure

- Charge sheet** : the written report against the accused presented to the court by the investigating officer.
- Warrant** : the authority provided by the court to the police to arrest a person.
- FIR** : first information report.

Exercises

1. Answer the questions by choosing the most appropriate alternative from those given below.

- a. For offence, the police needs permission of the court to file an FIR.
- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| i) cognizable | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) non-cognizable | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) criminal | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) civil | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- b. The court can direct a police officer to arrest a person and produce him before the court by issuing a against him.
- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| i) summon | <input type="checkbox"/> | ii) warrant | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| iii) chargesheet | <input type="checkbox"/> | iv) verdict | <input type="checkbox"/> |



c. The trial should not be held in a

- i) public place ii) government office
iii) secret location iv) media-friendly atmosphere

d. On the basis of the FIR, the starts its investigation.

- i) police ii) court iii) intelligence iv) bureaucracy

2. Write short answers for the following questions.

- What is the role of police in society?
- What is an FIR?
- What is the role of the Courts?
- What do you mean by Public prosecutor?
- What do you mean by Rule of Law?



What is police accountability? Enlist some of the measures to increase accountability at your level at the police station.

3. Answer the following questions in detail.

- Describe the composition of the police force in a district.
- Why is an F.I.R so important and where can it be lodged?
- List the functions of the police force.
- Who is a Public Prosecutor and why is his role so important?

4. Match the following.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| a. charge sheet | i) A complaint recorded for the first time by the police |
| b. cognizable offence | ii) Any crime that is punishable |
| c. FIR | iii) Written report prepared by the police on the basis of investigation |
| d. warrant | iv) the police can arrest without warrant |
| e. offence | v) a court's directive to a police officer to arrest someone |



5. State whether the following statements are true or false.

- As per the Supreme Court guidelines, the police is allowed to inflict certain forms of punishment on the accused.
- The Police has the right not to lodge FIR on some occasions.
- The Public prosecutor places before the court all the available evidences against the accused.
- During the investigation stage, the police controls the proceedings till the filing of the chargesheets.
- The police can directly file an FIR in case of a non-cognizable offence.

6. Arrange the following sentences in the proper order to make an FIR a meaningful procedure.

- The information given by the complainant should be signed by him.
- Once an FIR is filed, the case is registered and investigation begins.
- The FIR is then entered in a book which is to be kept by the officer-in-charge.
- The person who has to file an FIR has to go to the police station and meet the officer-in-charge.
- It is advisable to file an FIR at the earliest.



Value Based Questions

Suppose you are a policeman and a person has come to you to lodge an FIR. As you file the report you discover that the person who has been accused is someone close to you. You are now in dilemma. What will you do in such a situation? What are your feelings and the thoughts going through your head? Write a diary entry recording the experience.

Activity Zone

Ask your teacher to organize a visit to the nearest police station to find out for yourselves the procedure involved in lodging an FIR.